



Parks  
Canada

Parcs  
Canada

Manuscript Report  
Number

284

THE HALIFAX CITADEL, 1906-51

THE CANADIAN PERIOD

by Brenda Dunn

1977

The Halifax Citadel, 1906-51  
The Canadian Period,  
by Brenda Dunn  
1977



The Manuscript Report Series is printed in a limited number of copies and is intended for internal use by Environment Canada. Copies of each issue are distributed to various public repositories in Canada for use by interested individuals.

Many of these reports will be published in Canadian Historic Sites or History and Archaeology and may be altered during the publishing process by editing or by further research.

The Halifax Citadel, 1906-51  
 The Canadian Period,  
 by Brenda Dunn

xiii	Abstract
1	Narrative
1	Occupation by Canadian Army, 1906-31
1	1906-15
2	Prisoner-of-War Camp, 1914-16
6	1915-31
7	Unemployment Relief Project, November 1932 - June 1936
11	Work of the Unemployment Relief Project
11	Driveway
11	Citadel Walls
14	Other Work
14	Between Restoration Projects, June 1936 - October 1938
17	Restoration Project, October 1938-- March 1940
19	Reoccupation, 1940-46
20	Negotiations and Transfer, 1946-51
44	Buildings on the Parade
44	Cavalier
46	Cavalier Casemates
46	CC1
47	CC2
47	CC3
47	CC4
49	CC5
49	CC6
49	CC7
50	CC8 and CC9

50	CC10 and CC11
50	CC1A to CC7A
51	Third Floor
52	Rooms over South Cookhouses
52	Rooms over North Cookhouses
53	Verandah
55	Exterior Masonry Walls
56	Roof
59	Brick Block
61	Structural Details
62	Gun Shed
63	Structural Details
64	Associated Features
65	Canteen
66	Structural Details
68	South Magazine
69	Structural Details
70	Officers' Quarters
70	Structural Details
71	Kitchen and Mess
71	Structural Details
73	Latrine
73	Junior NCO's Recreation Building
73	Bicentenary Theatre
74	Hose House
98	Buildings on the Ramparts
98	Southeast Salient
98	Time Ball
100	Structural Details
100	Director of Signals Quarters
101	Signal Station (British)
102	Signal Station (Canadian)
104	Structural Details
106	Instrument Repair Shop/Side Arm Store
106	Position Finder Cell

106	Depression Range Finder Pit
107	Unidentified Building I
107	Unidentified Building II
107	South Ravelin
107	Side Arm Store
107	Position Finder Instrument Store
108	Drill Shed
109	Structural Details
109	Southwest Demi-Bastion
109	Wheeler's Shop
110	West Curtain
110	Unidentified Building III
110	Northwest Demi-Bastion
110	Side-Arm Store
110	Redan
110	Wooden Upper Storey
126	Citadel Walls
127	Southeast Salient
127	Escarp
127	Left Face
128	Right Face
128	Retaining Wall
129	South Ravelin
129	Escarps and Gorge Wall
130	Guardhouse
130	Southwest Demi-bastion
130	Escarp
130	Left Face
131	Right Face
132	Flank
132	Retaining Wall
133	Blast Wall
133	Ramp
133	Stairway to Casemates 51 and 52
134	West Curtain



134	Escarp
135	Retaining Wall
136	West Ravelin
136	Escarps and Gorge Wall
137	Guardhouse
137	Northwest Demi-bastion
137	Escarp
137	Flank
138	Left Face
138	Right Face
138	Retaining Wall
139	Steps to Rampart
139	Stairway to Casemates 57 and 58
140	North Ravelin
140	Escarps and Gorge Wall
140	Guardhouse
141	Northeast Salient
141	Escarp
141	Left Face
141	Right Face
141	Retaining Wall
141	Redan
141	Escarp
141	Left Face
142	Right Face
142	Retaining Wall
142	Counterscarp
143	Southeast Salient
143	South Ravelin
143	Southwest Demi-bastion
143	South Counterscarp
143	West Counterscarp
144	Drain
144	West Ravelin
145	South Counterscarp

145	Curve
146	North Counterscarp
146	Drain
147	Northwest Demi-bastion
147	West Counterscarp
147	North Counterscarp
148	North Ravelin
148	Northeast Salient
148	North Counterscarp
149	East Counterscarp
149	Redan
176	Casemates and Demi-casemates
176	Casemates
177	Southeast Salient, Casemates 0-4
177	Casemate 0
177	Casemate 1
178	Casemate 2
178	Casemate 3
178	Casemate 4
179	Southwest Demi-bastion, Casemates 5, 6, 6A, 51, 52
179	Casemate 5
179	Casemate 6
179	Casemate 6A
179	Casemate 51
180	Casemate 52
180	West Curtain, Casemates 7-14, 53-56
180	Casemate 7
180	Casemate 8
180	Casemate 9
181	Casemate 10
181	Casemate 53
181	Casemate 54
181	Casemate 55
182	Casemate 56
182	Casemates 11, 12 and 13
182	Casemate 14

183	Northwest Demi-bastion, Casemates 57, 58, 15A
183	Casemates 57, 58
183	Casemate 15A
183	Northeast Salient, Casemates 15-33
183	Casemates 15-22
184	Casemate 15
184	Casemate 16
185	Casemate 17
185	Casemate 18
186	Casemate 19
186	Casemate 20
187	Casemate 21
187	Casemate 22
188	Casemate 23
188	Casemate 24
189	Casemate 25
189	Casemates 26, 27, 28 and 29
190	Casemate 26
190	Casemate 27
190	Casemate 28
191	Casemate 29
191	Casemate 30
191	Casemate 31
192	Casemate 32
192	Casemate 33
193	Redan, Casemates 34-50
193	Casemate 34
193	Casemate 35
193	Casemates 36-41
194	A Block
194	Casemate 36
194	Casemate 36B
195	Casemate 37
195	Casemate 37B

195	B Block
195	Casemate 38
196	Casemate 38B
196	Casemate 39
197	Casemate 39B
197	C Block
197	Casemate 40
198	Casemate 40B
198	Casemate 41
199	Casemate 41B
199	D Block
199	Casemate 42
200	Casemate 42B
200	Casemate 43
200	Casemate 43B
200	Casemate 44
201	Casemate 44B
201	E Block
201	Casemate 45
202	Casemate 45B
202	Casemate 46
203	Casemate 46B
203	F Block
203	Casemate 47
204	Casemate 47B
204	Casemate 48
205	Casemate 48B
205	Casemate 49
206	Casemate 50
206	Demi-casemates
206	Southeast Salient, Demi-casemates 1-19
207	Demi-casemate 1
207	Demi-casemate 2
207	Demi-casemates 6 and 7
207	Demi-casemate 8
208	Demi-casemate 10



208	Demi-casemate 11
208	Demi-casemate 12
208	Demi-casemate 13
208	Southwest Demi-bastion
209	Demi-casemate 21
209	Demi-casemate 24
209	Demi-casemate 27
209	West Curtain, Demi-casemates 29-41
210	Demi-casemate 29
210	Demi-casemate 30
210	Demi-casemate 31
210	Demi-casemate 32
210	Demi-casemate 33
210	Demi-casemate 34
211	Demi-casemate 35
211	Demi-casemate 36
211	Demi-casemate 37
211	Demi-casemate 38
211	Demi-casemates 39 and 40
212	Demi-casemate 41
212	Northwest Demi-bastion, Demi-casemates 43-50
212	Demi-casemate 49
212	Demi-casemate 50
230	Appendix A. Memorandum of Agreement between the General Officer Commanding, Canada, representing His Majesty's Secretary of State for War and the Militia Council representing the Dominion Government of Canada.
232	Appendix B. Chart Showing the Chain of Responsibility in Unemployment Relief Camps, organized under the Department of National Defence Scheme in Military District No. 6.
234	Appendix C. Rules and Regulations. Unemployment Relief Camp. Citadel, Halifax.
239	Endnotes
277	Bibliography

## TABLES

57	1 Cavalier Casemate Use, Canadian Period
213	2 Casemate Use, Canadian Period
222	3 Demi-Casemate Use, Canadian Period

## ILLUSTRATIONS

26	1 Prisoners of war in Cavalier casemate, circa 1915
28	2 Prisoners of war in Cavalier casemate, circa 1915
30	3 Prisoners of war, circa 1915
32	4 Prisoners of war, circa 1915
34	5 Proposed quartering for Unemployment Relief Project, October 1932
36	6 Aerial photo of Citadel, 1942
38	7 Citadel buildings in 1906
40	8 Citadel buildings in 1940
42	9 Citadel buildings in 1950
76	10 Photo of parade from northeast salient, July 1928
78	11 Review of troops in front of Cavalier, circa 1918
80	12 Cavalier, July 1928
82	13 Cavalier, 1950
84	14 Sections and floor plans of Cavalier, with new roof and third floor, 1925
86	15 Ground floor plan of Brick Block, circa 1905
88	16 Record plan of Gun Shed, 1904
90	17 Floor plan of Canteen, 1921
92	18 South Magazine and southwest demi-bastion, July 1928
94	19 Foundation plan, floor plan and section of Officers' quarters, 1940
96	20 Bicentenary theatre, 1950
112	21 The east slope, circa 1929
114	22 Southeast salient escarp, signal station and time ball, 1927
116	23 Proposed plan for signal station, 1916
118	24 Photo of parade from northeast salient, 1950
120	25 Drill shed and signal station, 1920's
122	26 The south ravelin, 1950
124	27 View from north end of parade, July 1928

## ILLUSTRATIONS

- 150 28 Location plan with names of Citadel walls
- 152 29 Work proposed for Unemployment Relief Project, 1934
- 154 30 Work done by Unemployment Relief Project to June 1936
- 156 31 Trace showing work required in 1950
- 158 32 Aerial photo, 1923
- 160 33 Unemployment Relief Project, 1932
- 162 34 Sections showing proposed work on the northwest demi-bastion and west ravelin, 1933
- 164 35 Photo of part of west front, 1950
- 166 36 Retaining wall of the west curtain, 1950
- 168 37 Reconstructed south counterscarp of the west ravelin, 1950
- 170 38 Musketry gallery of reconstructed counterscarp, 1950
- 172 39 Dismantled counterscarp on the west front, 1950
- 174 40 Photo showing bad condition of part of west front in 1950
- 228 41 Trace, with casemate numbers

## Abstract

The Halifax Citadel was under the jurisdiction of the Canadian military between 1906, when it was transferred by the Imperial government to the Canadian Department of Militia and Defence, and 1951, when it was transferred to the Department of the Interior and became a national historic site. Canadian forces occupied the Citadel from 1906 to 1931 and during World War II. A prisoner-of-war camp operated at the Citadel during World War I, while an unemployment relief camp for 300 men was located on the site during the depression, one of two restoration projects at the Citadel in the 1930s.

This study examines the structural changes made at the Citadel during the Canadian period. The first chapter gives a brief narrative background, while subsequent chapters provide information on the 27 buildings on the parade and the ramparts between 1906 and 1951, the 61 casemates and some of the 50 demi-casemates. The work done by the two restoration projects is examined in a study of the Citadel walls.



## Narrative

### Occupation by Canadian Army, 1906-31

1906-1915

The Halifax Citadel was transferred to the Canadian government in 1905-06. Formal transfer of the Imperial Fortress of Halifax was made on 16 January 1906. The assessed value of the buildings at the Citadel at the time of transfer was £ 17,230.<sup>1</sup> Three buildings were relatively new; the Canteen, the Brick Block and the Gun Shed had been built since 1900. (See Appendix A for the terms of transfer).

The specifics of the transfer of troops at the Citadel is uncertain, as details are provided for all of the Halifax Garrison. The Royal Garrison Regiment and the Royal Garrison Artillery left Halifax in November of 1905.<sup>2</sup> The Royal Engineers were the last Imperial unit to depart, vacating the Royal Engineers Barracks on Sackville Street in March of 1906.<sup>3</sup> By June of 1906 a total of 155 Warrant Officers, non-commissioned officers and men had transferred to the Canadian Permanent Force, 77 from the Royal Garrison Artillery, 63 from the Royal Engineers and 15 from other corps or regiments.<sup>4</sup> In 1908-09 the Halifax Fortress was garrisoned by the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery, Royal Canadian Regiment and the Royal Canadian Engineers.<sup>5</sup>

Administration of the Halifax Fortress came under the Department of Militia and Defence which amalgamated with the Department of the Naval Service and the Air Board to form the Department of National Defence on 1 January 1923.<sup>6</sup> The annual reports of the Departments of Militia and Defence, and National Defence dealt with the Halifax area but seldom made specific, detailed reference to the Citadel.

Four books issued by the Halifax Board of Trade in 1906 and 1908 stated that the Citadel was open to the public.<sup>7</sup> A soldier was detailed to guide visitors, and a visitors' book was kept in the guard room. The Citadel was the only part of the Halifax Fortress open to the public at this time.

In the early years of the Canadian period, new buildings were added to the Citadel. A time ball house and a Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery drill shed were built in 1908. The British signal station was replaced by a large building on the ramparts some time between 1916 and 1920. (See Figure 8).

The Citadel was shared by Canadian soldiers and German prisoners of war during the first half of World War I.<sup>8</sup> At least 140 men of the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery and First Coastal Artillery were stationed at the Citadel in the spring of 1915. Kitchens and dining rooms were provided for the Canadian men in the Cavalier, which also served as quarters for some of the prisoners.

It seems that the activities at the Citadel went on as usual after the prisoner-of-war camp was established.<sup>9</sup> The signal station continued to operate and the Citadel continued to be used as a barracks, and a general stores and ammunition depot. In October of 1914, 500 rounds per gun for the 14 guns of moveable armament and 30,000 rounds of small arms ammunition were stored in the south magazine and various casemates. There were 50 rifles and bayonets in the Quartermaster's store and others in the barrack rooms. Civilians continued to come and go from the signal station and grocery bar, to work for the Royal Canadian Engineers and to serve as contractors for the Canadian Permanent Army Service Corps.

#### Prisoner-of-War Camp, 1914-16

A prisoner-of-war camp operated at the Citadel from 8 September 1914 to 3 October 1916.<sup>10</sup> Barrack equipment and bedding were issued for 50 prisoners of war in September of 1914.<sup>11</sup> By 28 November 1914, 53 men were interned at the Citadel while 79 men were interned at the prisoner-of-war camp on Melville Island.<sup>12</sup> A Superintendent of Detention Barracks and Officer in charge of Prisoners of War was responsible for both camps.

Quarters were provided for the Citadel prisoners in the Cavalier and in the northeast salient.<sup>13</sup> The first prisoners were placed in casemates in the northeast salient, for the Cavalier quarters were not ready until January of 1915. Accommodation was authorized for 11 men in each of the seven rooms on the second floor of the Cavalier. Six rooms on the north end of the ground floor were also made available for the camp - an ablution room, another room

for prisoners, a guard room for ten men, a guards' dining and barrack room for six men, and two kitchens for the prisoners. The third-floor rooms at each end of the Cavalier were also to be used. Prisoners of war were kept in casemates 18 to 22 in the northeast salient. Casemate 23 was an ablution room and casemates 24 and 25 were guard rooms. (See Figure 41).

In October of 1914 the Commander of the Royal Canadian Artillery, Halifax, submitted a complaint about the location of a prisoner-of-war camp at the Citadel.<sup>14</sup> Because of the military and civilian activities at the Citadel, he felt that it was not desirable to have German prisoners quartered there. He was particularly concerned about the proximity of the Sergeants' Mess to the prisoners' casemates and the fact that, at that time, prisoners had to cross the parade to use the latrine.

As a consequence there is necessarily a more or less general and constant going to and from of individuals in the vicinity, which in the dark might lead to either a soldier being shot under the impression he was a prisoner escaping or a prisoner being allowed to walk out under the impression he was a soldier.

As a result of the complaint, a barbed wire enclosure was constructed on the parade, in front of Cavalier casemates 4, 5, 6, 7 and 10.<sup>15</sup> Another enclosure also was built in front of the northeast salient; it seems that the proposed enclosure was to run between casemates 18 to 25, with a gate adjacent to casemate 25.

Despite the barbed wire enclosure, bars on the windows and other security measures there was an escape in January of 1915.<sup>16</sup> During the evening of 28 January the City police phoned and inquired if any prisoners were missing. A room check revealed that nine prisoners had escaped, two of whom were already in the custody of the police.

The subsequent court of inquiry disclosed that prisoners in the northeast salient had used a table knife to saw through a bar in casemate 21. A rope and coat hangers had been fashioned into a ladder which was used to descend into the ditch and to scale the counterscarp of the northwest demi-bastion. The court found that there had not been a prisoner count between 2 P.M. and 9 P.M. and that only one sentry rather than the prescribed two had been on duty during certain periods of the day, although there had been two at the time of the escape. Four of the prisoners of war were recaptured by 1

February 1915.

The escape precipitated recommendations for changes. In February 1915 it was suggested that all prisoners be confined in the Cavalier.<sup>17</sup> Plans were made to move the prisoners from the northeast salient to the rooms at the south end of the ground floor of the Cavalier. The R.C.G.A. grocery bar and kitchen and dining rooms of the R.C.G.A. and 1st C.G.A. in the Cavalier were to be relocated in the northeast salient. Work was started but was cancelled when a more drastic plan was introduced.

In March of 1915 there was a recommendation to transfer all prisoners of war at the Citadel to Amherst to a building prepared for Jamaican prisoners of war.<sup>18</sup> The recommendation was approved and arrangements were made for the transfer. Before the transfer could be carried out, however, word was received that 300 prisoners were expected from Jamaica.

A change in the prisoner-of-war camp was finally effected in May of 1915.<sup>19</sup> An unspecified number of Citadel prisoners was sent to Amherst and exchanged for prisoners of the officer class. It seems that the Citadel camp then became an officers' camp.

Changes in accommodation arrangements accompanied the change in class of prisoners.<sup>20</sup> The two rooms on the ground floor of the Cavalier which were being used as barrack and dining rooms for the guards were converted to dining rooms for the prisoners. A prisoners' room became a servants' room, and a washroom for the servants was installed at the back of the ablution room. The guards' kitchen and dining room moved to casemate 22 in the northeast salient. It is possible that the prisoners no longer lived in the northeast salient after this time. A 1916 plan describes the former prisoner-of-war casemates as soldiers' quarters, although the plan is very general and not necessarily reliable.<sup>21</sup>

During the spring and summer of 1915 estimates were made for Cavalier renovations.<sup>22</sup> It was hoped to provide four rooms, including a reading room, on the verandah, and to add three rooms on the third floor to the prisoner-of-war establishment. Separate lavatory accommodation was also proposed for the officers of the guard. It seems that the extra rooms were not provided, with the possible exception of the lavatory which was authorized by the General Officer Commanding in August of 1915.<sup>23</sup>

The increase in the number of prisoners in the Cavalier created a require-

ment for more exercise space. Proposals were made to exercise the prisoners either on the roof of the Cavalier or on a segregated area of the ramparts.<sup>24</sup> Both proposals were rejected. The barbed wire enclosure in front of the Cavalier and extended almost to the northeast salient, leaving space for a driveway between the fence and the retaining walls of the salient. Sometime after the construction of the new enclosure, prisoners posed for photographs at the north end of the Cavalier. (See Figures 3 and 4).

Many prisoners at the Citadel had been removed from ships. Of 80 prisoners held in Halifax in the spring of 1915, only one had been arrested in Halifax.<sup>26</sup> The other 79 men had been taken from steam ships - the S.S. Monserret, S.S. Kaiser Wilhelm DeGrosse, S.S. Navarro, S.S. Bethania, S.S. Spreewald, S.S. Loranzo, S.S. Thor, S.S. Belleventure and S.S. Comnewyne. The crew of two German steamers of the Hamburg-American Line, The S.S. Virginia and S.S. Albingia, were imprisoned at the Citadel at the beginning of the prisoner-of-war camp.<sup>27</sup> Many prisoners were reservists who were removed from ships by a blockading squadron of the Royal Navy which patrolled the water outside of New York harbour during the early part of the war.<sup>28</sup> Other prisoners were German naval officers and included a small group of prisoners who were taken to the Citadel after the battle of the Falkland Islands in December of 1914.

One of the reservists was a man named Frank Schmidt.<sup>29</sup> Schmidt had served one year in the German army before he moved to Mexico and was removed from a ship en route to Spain. In November of 1914 he made an application for release or alternately for permission to work, so that he could support the family he had left behind. Permission was denied.<sup>30</sup> Schmidt remained a prisoner in casemate 21 until he escaped in January of 1915. Testimony at the board of inquiry showed that the table knife used to saw through the window bar had been found in Schmidt's bed.<sup>31</sup>

Lev Bronstein, more commonly known as Leon Trotsky, was another civilian who was removed from a ship in Halifax. Contrary to local legend, he was not held at the Citadel. On 3 April 1917 he was taken from the ship, Kristianiafiord, and sent to Amherst where he was imprisoned until 29 April 1917.<sup>32</sup> The prisoner-of-war camp at the Citadel had terminated several months earlier, in October of 1916.

It seems that the men's baggage was transported with them from the ships. In one case, the baggage of two ships was left behind and later forwarded, with

the men's wages, by a Red Cross steamer, S.S. Stephano.<sup>33</sup> In the interim, the Canadian government supplied the prisoners with clothing. According to the Hague Convention, clothing and food equal to that of the troops was to be issued to prisoners of war.<sup>34</sup>

The prisoners were able to make local purchases. In November of 1914 Fortress Headquarters learned that a sergeant had been given permission to sell "odds and ends such as apples, canned goods etc." to the prisoners, although it not clear if it was at Melville Island, the Citadel, or both places.<sup>35</sup> Orders were given that in future no one was to sell directly to the prisoners of war.<sup>36</sup> Future purchases were to be supervised by the Chief Warden.

The quarters in the Cavalier seem to have been fairly comfortable. Furnishings included single cots, officers' arm chairs and tables covered with either tablecloths or blankets. Shelving units with two shelves and hooks were mounted on the side walls. Blankets hung beneath the shelves. Books, bottles and sundry items lined the shelves while clothes, photographs, and musical instruments hung on the walls. The masonry was either white-washed or painted, the windows were curtained and the floors were bare. (See Figures 1 and 2).

According to the report on Internment Operations, the prisoner-of-war camp at the Citadel closed on 3 October 1916.

### *1915-1931*

The Citadel was of limited military value during the Canadian period. In 1915 the Military Lands Board pointed out that, in addition to being obsolete as a defensive work, the Citadel no longer was essential as a signal and command post because of the existence of the the coast batteries and the use of airplanes. The historic value of the Citadel was its greatest asset.

The associations of Citadel Hill, if only the fact that the British flag has flown from its summit since 1749 and that almost every regiment of foot in the British regular army has at some time or other been quartered there, should ensure through all changes of the historic landmark by which it is crowned.<sup>37</sup>

Canadian troops remained at the Citadel until December of 1931. According to Brigadier-General Constantine, there were 106 men of the permanent

force at the Citadel in that year, most of whom spent considerable time at training camps and at the "Outforts".<sup>38</sup> On 17 December 1931 the Royal Canadian Regiment marched out of the Citadel to quarters in Wellington Barracks, leaving the Citadel deserted after more than a hundred years of British and Canadian occupation.<sup>39</sup>

The withdrawal of the army brought the question of the future of the Citadel to the attention of the public. Local interest was reflected in the response to a contest held by the Halifax Mail, soliciting suggestions for the Citadel if it were turned over to the city of Halifax.<sup>40</sup> The views of the participants varied; there were suggestions to level the Hill and divide it into building lots, to make a recreation center with tennis, badminton and quoit courts in the ditch, and to restore and animate the site.

Some dismantling was done before the Canadian troops left the Citadel. The Louisbourg mortars on the pedestals at the Citadel entrance were removed.<sup>41</sup> Serviceable stoves and stove parts were removed and used at Wellington Barracks and other parts of the fortress.<sup>42</sup> The dismantling does not seem to have been extensive and it seems that light fixtures and plumbing were left intact. Material remaining at the Citadel was soon damaged by vandals; within a year "There were practically no whole windows left, the plumbing had been ruthlessly smashed, locks broken".<sup>43</sup> Further deterioration was delayed by events precipitated by the economic depression of the 1930s.

#### Unemployment Relief Project, November 1932 - June 1936.

In 1932 the city of Halifax was facing a winter with an estimated 3000 men on relief. In September a delegation from the Board of Trade and the City Relief Commission met with the Commanding Officer of Military District 6, Halifax, and requested that part of the vacant Citadel be turned over for relief purposes.<sup>44</sup> It was suggested that barrack accommodation be provided at the Citadel for approximately 75 single, unemployed World War I veterans. Buildings and available equipment would be provided by the Department of National Defence, while food and administration costs would be supplied by the city.

Defence Headquarters concurred with the recommendation of the District Officer Commanding and made a conditional offer of assistance to the city.<sup>45</sup>



The Brick Block, one dining room and kitchen in the Cavalier and some equipment were to be turned over for the feeding and housing of 75 unemployed, single, returned soldiers. The city would be responsible for all other expenses including repairs, maintenance, services, security and administration.

Although the offer basically followed the guidelines discussed at the first meeting with the city's delegation, the mayor felt that the terms were not generous enough.<sup>46</sup> The Department of National Defence was urged to undertake capital expenditures on the buildings. Brigadier Constantine, District Officer Commanding MD No. 6, responded to this suggestion by restating his orders and reminding the city that another government department dealt with returned soldiers.<sup>47</sup>

The stalemate was broken within a week when a full-scale Unemployment Relief Project was authorized for the Citadel.<sup>48</sup> Unemployment relief was to take the form of a camp for 300 unemployed single men who were to be housed and fed at the Citadel and put to work on the Citadel walls. The initial period of operation was from 1 November 1932 to 31 March 1933. The camp was renewed at the end of each fiscal year and ran until 20 June 1936.

The Unemployment Relief Project occupied the Brick Block, Cavalier, Canteen, gun shed, redan and several other casemates. (See Figure 5). Accommodation was provided for 102 men in the Brick Block, 77 men in the Cavalier and 120 men in the redan. Two R.C.E. offices, an administration office, an ablution room, an office for Medical Officer and a six-bed hospital were located in the redan. Casemates 7, 8 and 9 were shops for the plumber, carpenters and blacksmith, while casemates 31 and 32 were administration offices. The Canteen was a recreation room. There were stores and a R.C.E. office in the gun shed. Two cookhouses and six dining rooms in the Cavalier provided the meals for the camp.

Responsibility for the organization and administration of the Unemployment Relief Camp rested with the Department of National Defence.<sup>49</sup> The District Officer Commanding, M.D. No. 6 had final authority. The administrative staff was selected by D.N.D., with the advice of a local committee, which probably was the Halifax Unemployment Relief Committee, which consisted of the Mayor and one alderman. The Camp Superintendent or Foreman was



responsible for quarters, rations, clothing, sanitation and Camp administration. All work was supervised by the District Engineer Officer, assisted by the Camp Engineer and personnel of the Royal Canadian Engineers. (See Appendix B, Chart showing the chain of responsibility).

The Department of National Defence did not have responsibility for selecting men. The local relief committee searched the list of single men on relief in the city and made recommendations to the Employment Service Office which, in turn, sent men to the Citadel relieving camp. Before the men were admitted, the camp Medical Officer examined them and sent their clothes to the military hospital on Cogswell Street for disinfection.

The first men were admitted on 1 November 1932.<sup>50</sup> Twenty-five were to be received daily until the full complement of 300 was achieved. By 28 November 1932, 309 men had been admitted to the camp, of whom 287 remained. Of the 309, 222 were of Canadian birth and 87 of foreign birth, including 32 men from Great Britain and 22 from Newfoundland.<sup>51</sup> Those of foreign birth had been in Canada from two to 30 years. Ages varied from 18 to 65. The criteria for admission was that the men were to be single, homeless, unemployed and in receipt of relief. The camp's purpose was to relieve the situation in Halifax; periodic suggestions to bring men from other parts of the province were rejected.<sup>52</sup>

The Camp did not maintain a full complement. In July of 1933 there were between 160 and 190 men at the Citadel and in September of 1933 there were 148 labourers. Authorization was granted in February of 1934 to increase the Citadel camp by 200, 25 men per day.<sup>54</sup> By mid-May of 1934, however, there were still only 224 men on relief at the camp.<sup>55</sup> The number at the camp never seems to have exceeded 300.

The men were given work, accommodation, military rations and 20 cents per day.<sup>56</sup> Fifteen men per room were assigned to the redan casemates, 17 men per room to the Brick Block and 11 men per room to the Cavalier. At the beginning of the Project there were only 14 toilets for 300 men. A washroom and drying room were provided for personal laundry. Recreation was provided in the Canteen where magazines, newspapers, and a gramophone had been donated by Halifax citizens, and weekly movies were supplied by the Nova Scotia Picture Censor. Tobacco was for sale at reduced rates. (See Appendix C, Rules and Regulations, Unemployment Relief Camp).

Life at the Citadel camp was regimented. The men worked an eight-hour day, 8 A.M. to 12 P.M. and 1:00 P.M. to 5 P.M. Detailed rules and regulations governed their lives. Each man was expected to carry his identification disc at all times and to obtain a pass before leaving the premises. All parcels taken from the Citadel were searched and watchmen were on 24-hour duty, manning the gate and patrolling the Citadel for fires and unauthorized persons.<sup>57</sup>

Despite precautions taken, thefts occurred. Crime was facilitated by the work being carried out on the west front; the dismantled counterscarp of the west ravelin and the large newly-opened drain at its curve allowed men to leave the camp without being observed. In 1933 two men from the camp were sentenced to the city prison, one for stealing blankets and one for stealing spoons.<sup>58</sup> In 1935 two men were convicted of stealing \$400. from the camp.<sup>59</sup>

There were two strikes protesting insufficient food in the early months of the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>60</sup> In the first strike, on 5 December 1932, the men were easily persuaded to return to work. The second strike lasted two days, 3-4 January 1933, and was more serious. The Royal Canadian Mounted Police and city police were alerted but were not required. The strike ended when the men were threatened with dismissal. Eight men were expelled. Agitators were blamed for both incidents, and labour organizations such as the Canadian Labour Defence League were suspected of subversive action in the second strike.

Another strike took place on 19 March 1935 when some of the men demanded pay for days when rain had prevented work, claiming that the men at Eastern Passage were being paid.<sup>61</sup> When the Citadel men were granted their money, they demanded pay for rainy days as a standard principle. Seventeen men were evicted from the camp. The Halifax Mail reported: "Few of the camp's inmates were in sympathy with the strike. They were well treated, they agreed, served good food and lived in war quarters". None of the Citadel men interviewed by the Mail in May of 1935 intended to join a planned march on Ottawa.<sup>62</sup>

Other recorded incidents at the Citadel camp included one "single drunk disturbance", which probably was not an isolated case, and one death which required an inquest.<sup>63</sup> In the latter case, accidental death was ruled when a

man died after a "friendly boxing bout" in one of the barrack rooms.

The labour force of the camp was relatively self-sufficient. Skilled jobs were filled by relief men, where possible. In December of 1932 four male nurses on relief staffed the temporary hospital.<sup>64</sup> A cobbler and a barber were established in shops. Relief men operated the blacksmith's, carpenters' and plumber's shops. Outside skilled tradesmen were also used, however, for 15 carpenters and riggers, a blacksmith and a plumber were required in October of 1932.<sup>65</sup> Men unfit for heavy work were employed in such jobs as cooks' helper and room orderlies. The programme of work organized for the men at the camp was oriented for unskilled labour.

#### Work of the Unemployment Relief Project

The work of the Unemployment Relief Project at the Citadel consisted of clearing drains in the ditch, building a driveway around the perimeter of the Citadel, and pointing and dismantling walls.<sup>66</sup> Work was also done on other military sites. Between 1 November 1932 and 31 May 1936, 56.4 per cent of the total man days of the Unemployment Relief Project was used at the Citadel - 27.4 per cent on road construction and maintenance, 18 per cent on Citadel walls, 6.6 per cent on camp maintenance, 3.6 per cent on Citadel pathways and drainage and .8 per cent on surveying, and maintenance of shrubs and trees around the hill.

#### *Driveway*

Construction of a driveway around the Citadel was one of the first priorities of the Project.<sup>67</sup> The driveway ran parallel to the counterscarp walls and included a new access road from North Park Street. The driveway was completed by the end of July 1933. Its construction involved little capital expenditure; the retaining walls were built of granite blocks from the Citadel and a temporary surfacing was done with clinkers and old bricks. Maintenance provided continual employment for men from the camp.

#### *Citadel Walls*

A proposal for the work on the Citadel walls was outlined for Brigadier-

General C. F. Constantine, District Officer Commanding, Military District, No. 6, before the Unemployment Relief Project began.

Nature of work - Repairs Citadel walls. This work will consist, to begin with, of clearing drains to Citadel walls and taking down stone work where walls are out of line and unsafe. The earth behind the walls will have to be removed concurrently with the removal of the stone. It is proposed to remove the earth by pick, shovel and wheel barrows using plank runways for the wheel barrows. It is proposed to remove the stone work using derricks constructed of lashed spars and tackles. To get the stone away from the foot of the walls, it will be necessary to use some kind of track and trucks. It might be possible to remove the stone work without the use of staging, but owing to the unsafe condition of some of the walls and the difficulty in trying to loosen and handle the stones by standing on top of the wall without further protection, and especially in view of the fact that the men employed will be unskilled, it is considered that for the safety of the men engaged it will be necessary to erect staging against the face of the walls which have to be taken down, and therefore an estimate for the purchase of material for staging required at the commencement of the work is submitted.<sup>68</sup>

Constantine's plan for the first winter was to dismantle the dangerous walls, leaving reconstruction for a later date.<sup>69</sup> (See Figure 33). On 23 November he took this a step further and recommended against reconstructing the walls, thus avoiding the expense of hiring skilled masons and of purchasing materials.

The proposal is briefly that the walls where dangerous be taken down and the earth behind each wall be graded back to a natural slope and then be left as a permanent bank. In some cases it would be necessary to take down the stone wall entirely and therefore grade the earth back to a slope from the base of the wall. In other cases where only the top portion of the wall was gone, then this top portion

only would be removed and the earth at the back of that portion graded back to a natural slope. In certain cases where a wall need only be taken down at the base of the wall and cover same with the earth removed from behind it forming a bank running out into the moat, care being taken to ensure that the ditches in the bottom of the moat are not interfered with.<sup>70</sup>

A light railway was built to handle the granite blocks which weighed between 500 and 850 lbs. apiece.<sup>71</sup> The track was located at the north end of the Citadel and ran behind the Canteen, parallel to the retaining wall of the northwest demi-bastion, and out on to the parade. (See Figure 29). The gauge of the tracks was 18 inches.<sup>72</sup> The tramcars were salvaged from a shed on George's Island and in some cases dated back to 1892. As the walls were dismantled, the granite blocks were stored on the parade, within the area bounded by the tracks.

Midway through the Unemployment Relief Project, the work being done at the Citadel came under strong criticism. In July of 1934, the Commander of the General Staff inspected the Citadel work and found it poorly planned, poorly executed and "untidy".<sup>73</sup> He reminded the Quartermaster General, who, in turn reminded the District Officer Commanding, that:

In the work of renovation care will be exercised to ensure that the original form of the masonry, galleries, etc. is preserved.<sup>74</sup>

As a result of the criticism, a detailed schedule of priority for the work was requested and approved.<sup>75</sup> (See Figure 29). Dr. D.C. Harvey, the Nova Scotia member of the Historic Sites and Monuments Board, was asked to visit the Citadel, which he did on 7 December 1934. His report was glowing;

I was much impressed and very pleased with the general line of repair and reconstruction.... The pointing is remarkably well done for unskilled labour - in fact, it is perhaps more carefully done than if skilled labour had been employed on a contract basis....

I examined casually the plans in the citadel office and obtained a fairly general view as to what is being done, and so far as I am competent to judge I am quite in

agreement with the priority list of proposed work and the type of reconstruction that is aimed at.<sup>76</sup>

By the end of the Project in June of 1936, the men on the Unemployment Relief Project had reconditioned the ravelins and pointed part of the Cavalier, about one eighth of the escarp and two thirds of the counterscarp. Various degrees of dismantling had taken place on the south and north counterscarps of the west ravelin and the retaining walls of the west curtain and southwest demi-bastion. (See Figure 30).

When the Unemployment Relief Project ended on 10 June of 1936, the work was at various stages of completion. The earlier criticism that the work was untidy still applied. Thousands of tons of stone littered the ditch and the parade.<sup>77</sup>

#### *Other Work*

Approximately 44 per cent of the work of the Unemployment Relief Project was outside of the Citadel. The labouring jobs included cable repairs, snow removal at the Halifax Garrison, dismantling of H.M. Gun Wharf, and work on the guns at Royal Artillery Park.<sup>78</sup> Road work was done at Royal Artillery Park, Wellington Barracks, McNab's Island, Bedford Rifle Range, Western Armament District, and between Connaught and Sandwich Batteries. Ground work was done at Fort Massey Cemetery, Royal Artillery Park, Garrison Games Grounds, Wellington Barracks, Glacis Barracks and the Military Hospital.

#### Between Restoration Projects, June 1936 - October 1938

As the Unemployment Relief Project neared an end, the question of the fate of the Citadel was raised.<sup>79</sup> It was feared that if the Citadel was left unguarded, vandalism would occur, as it had in 1931-32. The Citadel was more vulnerable to vandalism in 1936 than in 1932, for there was easy access over the remains of the west ravelin counterscarp which had been dismantled during the Unemployment Relief Project.

The Citadel was not completely empty in the spring of 1936. The signal station was still operated by the Department of the Marine, the gun shed

held the guns of the saluting battery and the drill shed continued to be used for training purposes.

Brigadier Hertzberg, the District Officer Commanding, MD No. 6, submitted recommendations to the Secretary, Department of National Defence, on 22 April 1936.<sup>80</sup> He felt that the Department had two options - (1) to provide supervision by either four caretakers or a R.C.M.P. patrol; (2) to dismantle everything that could be salvaged from the buildings and allow them to deteriorate. In the latter case, he felt that the Citadel would be saved by citizens' protests to the government. Another possibility suggested was the transfer of the Citadel to the Department of the Interior.

After a number of memoranda at various levels of the Department of National Defence, it was decided to approach the Department of the Interior about a transfer. This was not a new idea, for a transfer had been offered in July of 1932 and even though no commitment had been made, the Department of National Defence had consulted the Department of the Interior before starting the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>81</sup>

The question of the transfer of the Citadel was reopened in a letter drafted for L.R. LaFleche, the Deputy Minister of National Defence, to the Deputy Minister of the Interior on 10 June 1936.<sup>82</sup> A subsequent letter by LaFleche stated that the Department of National Defence wanted to retain "for the present time" the Brick Block, the saluting platform, the gun shed, the south magazine, the drill shed and the south ravelin, sallyport number 2 and the adjoining casemate, C5, and the Garrison Game Grounds.<sup>83</sup> Appendices to LaFleche's letter of 29 July 1936 provided schedules of the work done by the Unemployment Relief Project and the remaining work which was required.

Two inspections were made by the Department of the Interior to obtain information and advice on the proposed transfer.<sup>84</sup> Dr. Harvey visited the site during the summer and made a favourable report. On 18 and 19 September 1936, National Parks Engineer, N. A. Sparks, made an inspection and, on 24 November, submitted a detailed report with photographs, a plan and a schedule of estimated repairs. A sum of \$125,500 was projected for labour and materials for work on the Citadel walls and on the Cavalier.

While awaiting a decision about a transfer, the Department of National Defence postponed action on the Citadel buildings until 1 December 1936. On 11 June 1936 four ex-soldiers were hired as temporary caretakers, at a



monthly salary of \$40.00, paid out of Unemployment Relief Project funds.<sup>85</sup> They were housed in the former guardrooms in the redan and served as guides to sightseers, caretakers of the grounds and watchmen of the buildings and stores within the confines of the Citadel walls. By the end of December 1936 relief funds were becoming depleted and the caretaker staff was reduced to two men who were to be terminated on 31 March 1937.<sup>86</sup>

The Department of the Interior declined the transfer of Citadel ownership. By August of 1937 both General Cruickshank, Chairman of the Historic Sites and Monuments Board, and Dr. Harvey had recommended that transfer be contingent on the granting of funds for repairs, maintenance and landscaping.<sup>87</sup> An internal memorandum of 17 December 1937 stated that the Minister of the Interior shared this view, although no definite decision had been made.<sup>88</sup> A transfer did not take place at this time and, in fact, only eventually took place when funds were made available.

Although temporary fences were erected and caretakers maintained a 24-hour vigilance, vandalism still occurred. It seems that the caretakers were discharged at the end of the fiscal year and replaced by three soldiers who were still living at the Citadel in June of 1937.<sup>89</sup>

During the months that a transfer was under consideration, there was great public interest in the fate of the Citadel. An unfounded report from Ottawa in the Halifax Mail in July of 1936 aroused attention by suggesting that Citadel Hill might be divided into building lots.<sup>90</sup>

In March, April and June of 1937, the Halifax Mail waged a campaign for the preservation of the Citadel.<sup>91</sup> The main thrust of the argument was a comparison of the neglected Halifax Citadel with the Quebec Citadel which was being restored by the federal government. Editorials from 17 June to 25 June were accompanied by photos taken by staff photographer Allan Fraser and headed by such titles as "Not a War-Torn Fort in Spain but Halifax Citadel", "Save the Citadel!", and "Crumbling Moat Walls at Citadel a Disgrace. All Citizens Should Demand Action."

The tourist potential of the Citadel was one of the main reasons for concern over the site's deplorable condition. The Citadel continued to be a tourist attraction and was reported to have had approximately 5000 visitors during the summer of 1936.<sup>92</sup> A tourist pamphlet issued by the Halifax Tourist and convention Bureau and Halifax Board of Trade in 1937 had a cover photo of



the Citadel, which probably was an earlier photo taken while the Citadel was still occupied.

Visitors in 1937 found the Citadel littered with garbage and cluttered with stones and earth left by the Unemployment Relief Project. The buildings were deteriorating. The perimeter road built by the Relief Project was in dangerous condition. In one of its articles, the Halifax Mail stated:

In Halifax, the Federal authorities have disowned the Citadel; they have permitted part of the walls to be torn down; they have left behind them a dangerous road and rock-strewn paths: within the structure, they have permitted piles of tin cans to accumulate.<sup>93</sup>

In June 1 of 1937 and May of 1938, Gordon B. Isnor, member of Parliament from Halifax, made representations to the government to take action on the Halifax Citadel.<sup>94</sup> He wanted to see the Citadel repaired and utilized as a tourist attraction.

#### Restoration Project, October 1938 - March 1940

Public pressure was undoubtedly partially responsible for the creation of a restoration programme which began on 10 October 1938. Work continued until the end of the fiscal year, 31 March 1939, resumed on 18 May 1939 and ran until at least 17 February 1940 and probably until the end of the fiscal year.<sup>95</sup> A total of \$83,500 was expended - \$38,000 in 1938-39 and \$45,500 in 1939-40.<sup>96</sup>

When the plans were being made for the restoration project, the Parks Branch of the Department of Mines and Resources refused to have any involvement in the work and argued that administration should be handled by the Department of National Defence.<sup>97</sup> Mines and Resources reiterated that a transfer had not yet been effected and should not be until major funding was available, and then only on the recommendation of the Historic Sites and Monuments Board. Thus, the new restoration project was set up with limited funds supplied by the Department of Mines and Resources and all administration provided by the Department of National Defence. A military engineer, Colonel E. R. Vince, RCE, District Engineer Office, MD 6, was in charge of the work which was carried out by ex-servicemen supplied by the

Veterans' Assistance Commission.

The Department of National Defence appointed an honorary committee of three Halifax men "to advise and assist the department in connection with the preservation of the Halifax Citadel". A press release of 23 September 1938 announced the appointment of Dr. D. C. Harvey, president of the Nova Scotia Historical Society, J. Ronald Macadam, vice-president of the Halifax Board of Trade and Colonel A. Stanley Bauld.<sup>98</sup>

Because of the tremendous amount of work required and the limited funds available, the scope of the restoration programme was modest. When the first vote of money was under consideration, the Deputy Minister of Mines and Resources reminded his counterpart in National Defence:

It is realized that the amount allotted for this work could only be considered as a maintenance fund and will not be sufficient to initiate a comprehensive scheme of restoration and the uses to be made of these funds will, therefore, have to be considered accordingly.<sup>99</sup>

The programme of work concentrated mainly on a general clean-up of the Citadel and on repairs to the perimeter and access roads, and to, a lesser extent, on restoration work.

Before the restoration project began, the premier of Nova Scotia expressed the opinion that the most important work to be done at the Citadel was the widening and paving of the road.<sup>100</sup> The District Engineer and the advisory committee seem to have shared his view, for work on the perimeter and access roads constituted two of the five items in the work programmes for 1938-39 and 1939-40.<sup>101</sup> It was hoped to have the roads ready by 15 June 1939 when the King and Queen were to visit Halifax.<sup>102</sup>

During the first month of the project, road work was given priority.<sup>103</sup> When more of the crew were assigned to other areas, work continued on the roads; road improvement and maintenance continued to the end of the project. The road levelled, graded and gravelled, the ditches were cleared and posts were installed. Asphaltting was scheduled for both the perimeter and access roads in 1939-40 but apparently was not carried out.

The work inside the Citadel was principally cosmetic. Much of the debris left at the close of the Unemployment Relief Project was cleared away; hundreds of tons of stone were removed from the parade and large

quantities of stone and earth were removed from the ditch. The roof of the Cavalier was dismantled as were wooden buildings on the ramparts. A new bridge was constructed at the Citadel entrance. Eight flag poles were placed around the Citadel, one "at each point of star". Twenty cannons were removed from the perimeter road where they were being used as chain posts, and from the ditch. Considerable time was also spent in clearing wall drains and drains in the ditch and in shovelling snow.

Restoration work seems to have been confined to the west ravelin counterscarp which had been partially dismantled during the Unemployment Relief Project. The crews of the 1938-40 restoration project rebuilt the musketry gallery and walls of the south counterscarp of the west ravelin.

#### Reoccupation, 1940-46

Canadian military forces reoccupied the Citadel during World War II. While the restoration project continued its work in 1940, the Department of National Defence prepared to return to the Citadel. Reoccupation probably took place in 1940.<sup>104</sup>

All available space at the Citadel seems to have been utilized. Some of the buildings were given new uses; the signal station became a staff N.C.Os' mess, the drill shed on the south ravelin became a gymnasium, and the gun shed became a dry canteen and possibly a store for machine guns.<sup>105</sup> The south magazine was a wet canteen circa 1940 but was converted to an anti-aircraft operations room in September of 1943.<sup>106</sup> It seems that the Cavalier remained vacant: the building was unsuitable for occupancy by March of 1944.<sup>107</sup> The Canteen continued to be used as a mess while the Brick Block continued to serve as a barracks. The casemates in the northeast salient were occupied by engineers and also used for lecture rooms and store rooms, probably by the Coast and Anti-aircraft Artillery Training Center. Officers' quarters, NCO quarters, the pay office and guard rooms were located in the redan.

Four wooden buildings were constructed on the parade circa 1940.<sup>108</sup> Mess space for 300 men was provided in a temporary building located between the south magazine and the gun shed. A recreation building for Junior NCOs and a small latrine were also constructed at the south end of the parade.

A temporary H-shaped building at the north end of the parade served as officers' quarters and included a room for the officer commanding. A flag pole stood on a semi-circular plot of grass between the officers' quarters and the northeast salient. (See Figure 6).

Very little research has been done on the companies which were stationed at the Citadel during World War II. The Prince Edward Island Highlanders were in barracks in February of 1941.<sup>109</sup> The 23 Coast and Anti-Aircraft Training Center was in residence in 1942 and handed over the Citadel quarters to No. 1 Works Coy, RCE in December of 1942.<sup>110</sup> Members of the Canadian Woman's Corps were living in the Canteen in 1944 and working in the Gun Operations Room in the south magazine in 1943.<sup>111</sup> In March of 1945 there was a recommendation to use the Brick Block and Kitchen and Mess to house and feed 200 men of No. 6 Engineer Services and Works Company, R.C.E.<sup>112</sup>

The Citadel continued to provide barrack and storage space for more than a year after the end of World War II.<sup>113</sup> In January of 1946 the Royal Canadian Corps of Signals was occupying the signal station while the R.C.E. No. 6 were occupying the gun shed, Kitchen and Mess, south magazine, Brick Block, temporary Officers' Quarters and the Canteen. The RCE No. 6 planned to vacate the barracks by 31 August 1946.<sup>114</sup>

#### Negotiations and Transfer, 1946-51

The perennial problem of what was to be done with the Citadel arose after World War II. It seems that the Citadel was reoffered to the Department of Mines and Resources in November of 1945.<sup>115</sup> In May of 1946 the Historic Sites and Monuments Board recommended that the transfer be deferred, once again stating that a transfer without funds would serve no purpose.<sup>116</sup> It was also pointed out that work on the Citadel at that time would take men and materials away from more pressing housing projects.

In December of 1946 Gordon B. Isnor, member of Parliament from Halifax, communicated his criticism of the neglected condition of the Citadel to the Minister of Defence.<sup>117</sup> His action prompted the preparation of a brief report by the General Officer Commanding on the condition of Citadel Hill in January of 1947.<sup>118</sup> The officer recommended the demolition of the temporary wooden buildings on the parade and a transfer of property to the Department of Mines and Resources.

In May of 1947 a plan was prepared showing the areas at the Citadel required by the Department of National Defence for the reserve and active army.<sup>119</sup> A substantial portion of the Citadel was indicated - the Brick Block, the gun shed, the south magazine and demi-casemates of the southwest demi-bastion, all the casemates in the redan (C34 to C50), and casemates 11, 12, 13 and 20. The remainder of the Citadel was available for transfer to the Department of Mines and Resources.

In June of 1947 the city of Halifax became a third party in the negotiations; the Department of National Defence began to prepare an agreement.<sup>120</sup> The amount of space which the department wanted to retain had decreased considerably by July of 1947.<sup>121</sup> The south magazine, Brick Block and Canteen were to be retained for the reserve army and the gun shed and the signal station were to be retained for the active army. The city was to maintain all other buildings, grounds and roads and to provide free access to the army.

Negotiations with the city met with no more success than those with the Department of Mines and Resources.<sup>122</sup> The length of the lease was the main point of contention. The city wanted either a longterm lease similar to the 99-year lease for Point Pleasant Park or a clear title, and was reluctant to accept a yearly or ten-year lease. The retention of the buildings by the army also created problems. Although the city council was still debating the terms of transfer in January of 1949, the mayor was making optimistic statements to the press about having the Citadel "refurbished" in time for Halifax's Bicentenary celebrations.

Newspaper accounts give examples of some of the ideas for the Citadel which were being discussed in "civic circles".<sup>123</sup> One idea was a "Nova Scotia Parliament Hill" with hilltop legislative buildings, landscaped slopes and an elevator built into the side of the hill. A wax museum within the Citadel walls was also discussed. Some of the members of the city council were in favour of levelling the hill and selling the property for commercial development.

The Citadel continued to deteriorate during the years of negotiation. Proposed repairs to buildings still in use by the army were postponed until permanent ownership was established. Vandalism continued despite supervision. An inspection following a theft from gun stores in April of 1947

revealed eight places of illegal entry into the Citadel over collapsed walls and through sallyports.<sup>124</sup> In January of 1947 an incident was cited where 200 panes of glass were broken while a caretaker was absent for three-quarters of an hour.<sup>125</sup>

A reporter visited the Citadel some time during the period that negotiations were in progress between the city and DND. His article presented a romantic and exaggerated picture of the site:

Like a story-book deserted village stands today Halifax's greatest tourist attraction and link with the city's colorful past-Citadel Hill's fortifications.

Desolation and destruction are everywhere.

The old granite or brick-face structures which housed British and Canadian troops down through the years are crumbling on all sides.

Almost every window has been shattered. Almost every door has been ripped off its hinges.

Inside, plaster and masonry have fallen to the floor in a litter of dust intermingled with overturned tables, rusty pipes, broken beer bottles, charred paper and other marks of the work of vandals. Only the driveway, through the centre of the property and the solid stone seem free from damage.

And over the entire scene lies a stillness that is creepy and sad. Only the sound of a wireless key in the ramshackle army signal station on top the east-end rampart and the rustle of two children at play among the broken granite work at the other end of the square disturbed the quiet....<sup>126</sup>

A general caretaker, a signalman's family and a caretaker for the 30th Park Field Company R.C.E. and his family were living at the Citadel at the time of the reporter's visit. A sign at the gate prohibited trespassers. Signs dating from World War II hung over many of the doors - "Quarter Stores", "MIR", "Air Raid Shelter" and "Post Office".

Even in its dilapidated condition, the Citadel remained a tourist attraction. A special arrangement with the Department of National Defence permitted the city to use the Citadel for tourists during the summer of 1948.<sup>127</sup> In 1949, Halifax's Bicentennial year, a stage was constructed on

the parade and the Citadel became the site of an outdoor theater.<sup>128</sup>

In the spring of 1950 the Historic Sites Committee of the City Council passed a resolution requesting the Historic Sites and Monuments Board to deal with Citadel Hill.<sup>129</sup> A preliminary grant of \$10,000 was sought to begin rehabilitation of the site.

No action was taken on the Citadel in 1950. The annual meeting of the Historic Sites and Monuments Board adopted a resolution which restated that the Citadel was of national historic importance, that necessary funds were not available and that an inspection of the site should be made before any restoration was undertaken.<sup>130</sup> It did recommend that an appropriation of \$25,000 be made by the Department of Resources and Development, however, to make the site more accessible, more presentable and safer for visitors. In July the mayor was informed that funds could not be secured for the appropriation and no work would be carried out that year.<sup>131</sup>

In April of 1950 the Royal Commission on National Development in Arts, Letters and Sciences, more commonly known as the Massey Commission, was asked to extend its terms of reference to provide advice on "Measures for the preservation of historical monuments".<sup>132</sup> A special committee of five engineers was appointed to study the Halifax Citadel - Lieutenant Colonel B.H. Darwin, Command Engineer, Eastern Command Army, Major A.J. Abbott, second-in-command, 6 Works Company RCE, J.P. Vaughan, Chief Structural Engineer, Department of Highways and Public Works, N.S. Officer Cadet Bezanson, 6 Works Company RCE and J.W. Thompson, Resident Engineer, Department of Highways and Public Works, N.S. The committee inspected the Citadel during the summer of 1950 and submitted a report to the Commission on 28 October 1950.

The report to the Massey Commission provided estimates for three restoration schemes. It was estimated that \$1,070,000 would be required for complete restoration, \$495,000 for partial restoration of the Citadel and minimal work on the remainder, and \$120,000 for minimal work to present a safe but unrestored site. The engineers were impressed with the site.

Considering the long unbridled action of the elements, and the depredations and neglect of man, the Halifax Citadel is in remarkable state of preservation, and in general indicates an excellent standard of original construction.<sup>133</sup>



At the time of the Massey Commission, most of the surviving buildings at the Citadel were being used and maintained.<sup>134</sup> The engineers were using the Brick Block and the Canteen while the basement of the Canteen was leased to the Maritime Broadcasting Company. The gun shed, the south magazine and the signal station were still in use. The time ball and the Cavalier were empty and dilapidated. A sign posted at the Citadel entrance, read "Royal Canadian Engineers".<sup>135</sup>

The condition of the Citadel walls was very much the same in the inspections of 1936 and 1950. Much of the collapse and debris were the result not of natural deterioration but of the work of the Unemployment Relief Project.

The two families mentioned in the late 1940s newspaper account probably were still living at the Citadel in 1950. The Massey photos show clothes-lines at the signal station and behind the Cavalier, and a Child's swing behind the Brick Block.<sup>136</sup> Two caretakers paid by the Department of National Defence were still at the Citadel in July and September of 1951; one man fired the noonday gun and looked after the grounds while the other cared for the building where they lived, probably the Brick Block.<sup>137</sup>

The Massey Commission report was submitted to the government in May of 1951. The report acknowledged the great historic and architectural interest of the Citadel and recommended:

That special and immediate provision be made to stem the progressive dilapidation of the Halifax Citadel and of the Cavalier Barracks within its walls; that for this purpose the care of the Citadel be transferred forthwith from the Department of National Defence to the National Parks Service; that special appropriations by the Federal Government be made, without prejudice to other projects recommended by the Historic Sites and Monuments Board, so that the Halifax Citadel may be suitably restored progressively over the next few years, if possible through the co-operation of the Municipality, the Province and the Federal Government.<sup>138</sup>

The Citadel was transferred to the Department of Resources and Development by Order-in-Council 2430 on 16 May 1951, subject to existing leases and licences and to the right of the Department of National Defence to use and occupy certain buildings.<sup>139</sup> The property transferred included the



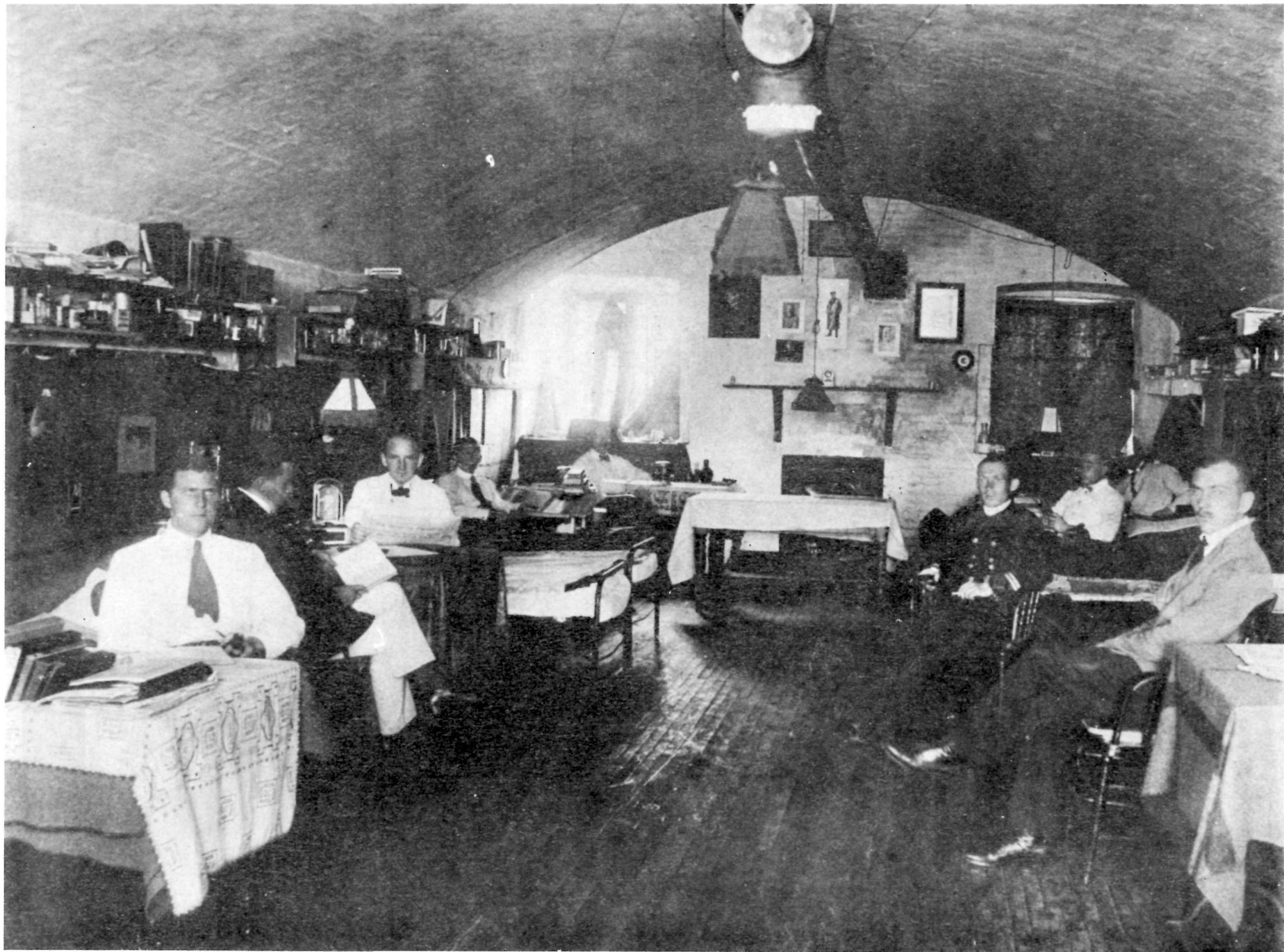
Citadel, the land 33 ft. from the center of the perimeter road, and the access roads. The remainder of the glacis not required by the Department of National Defence was transferred by Order-of-Council 6728 on 14 December 1951, subject to existing leases and licences.<sup>140</sup>

The Citadel was an historic site until 5 July 1956 when it became a national historic park.<sup>141</sup> One of the long-term objectives for the new site and subsequent park was to restore it to the "original", thus removing all vestiges of the Canadian period.

- 1 One of the Cavalier casemates occupied by the prisoner-of-war camp during World War I. (Public Archiyes of Nova Scotia.)



- 2 Prisoners of war in a Cavalier casemate, 1915. (Public Archives of Nova Scotia.)



- 3 Prisoners of war posing at the north end of the Cavalier, circa 1915.  
Some of the men are also seen in the Cavalier casemate in figure 2.  
(Department of National Defence. Directorate of History.)





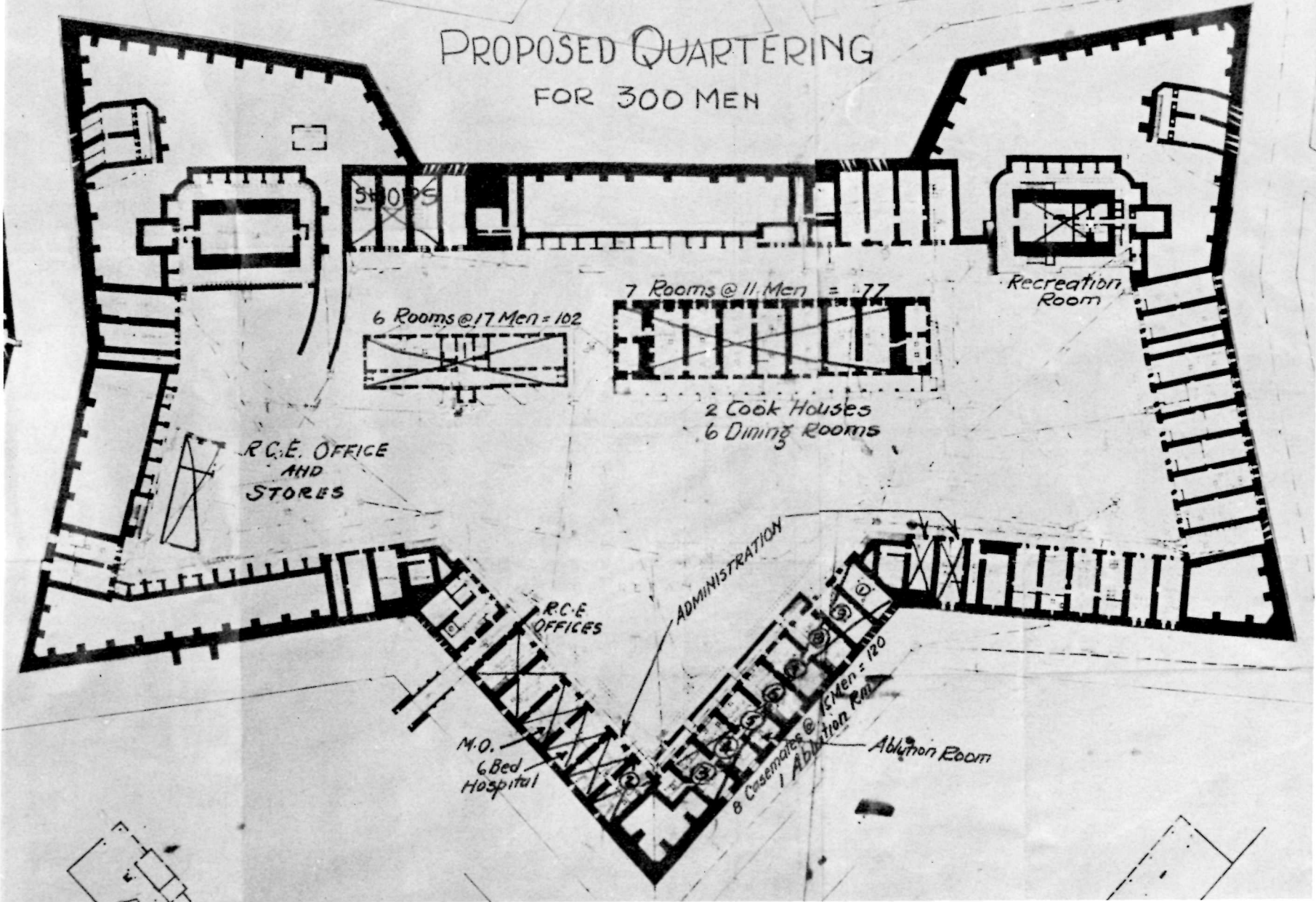
4 German naval ratings held as prisoners of War in Halifax Citadel during World War I, circa 1915. (Department of National Defence. Directorate of History.)





- 5 Proposed quartering for 300 men at the unemployment relief camp at the Citadel, October 1932. (Public Archives of Canada, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052.)

PROPOSED QUARTERING  
FOR 300 MEN



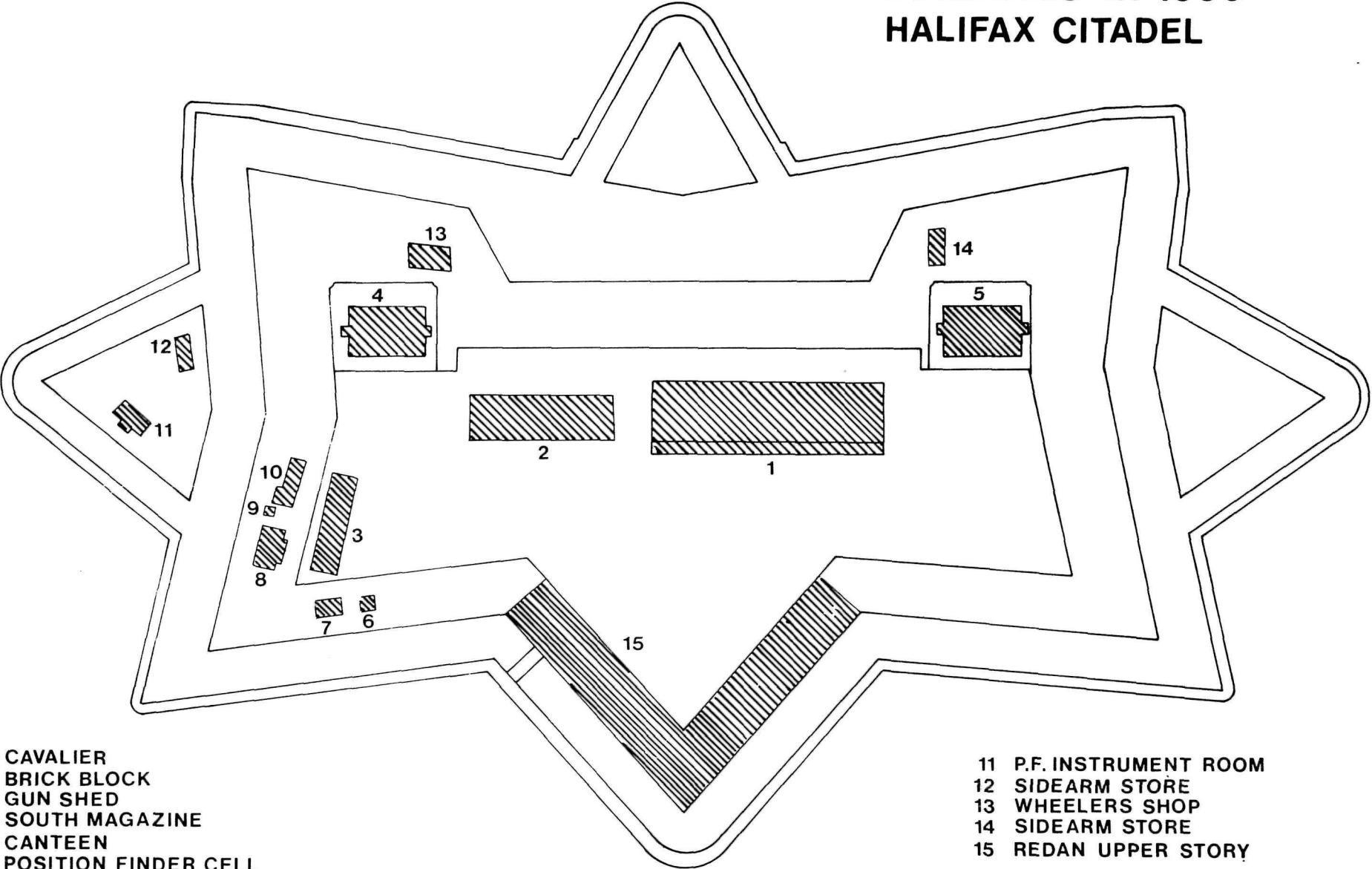
6      Aerial photograph of the Citadel, 1942. (Department of National  
Defence. C.F.B. Rockcliffe REA 253-16.)



7 Buildings in 1906. There were five buildings on the parade and ten on the ramparts when the Citadel was transferred to the Canadian government. (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)



# BUILDINGS IN 1906 HALIFAX CITADEL



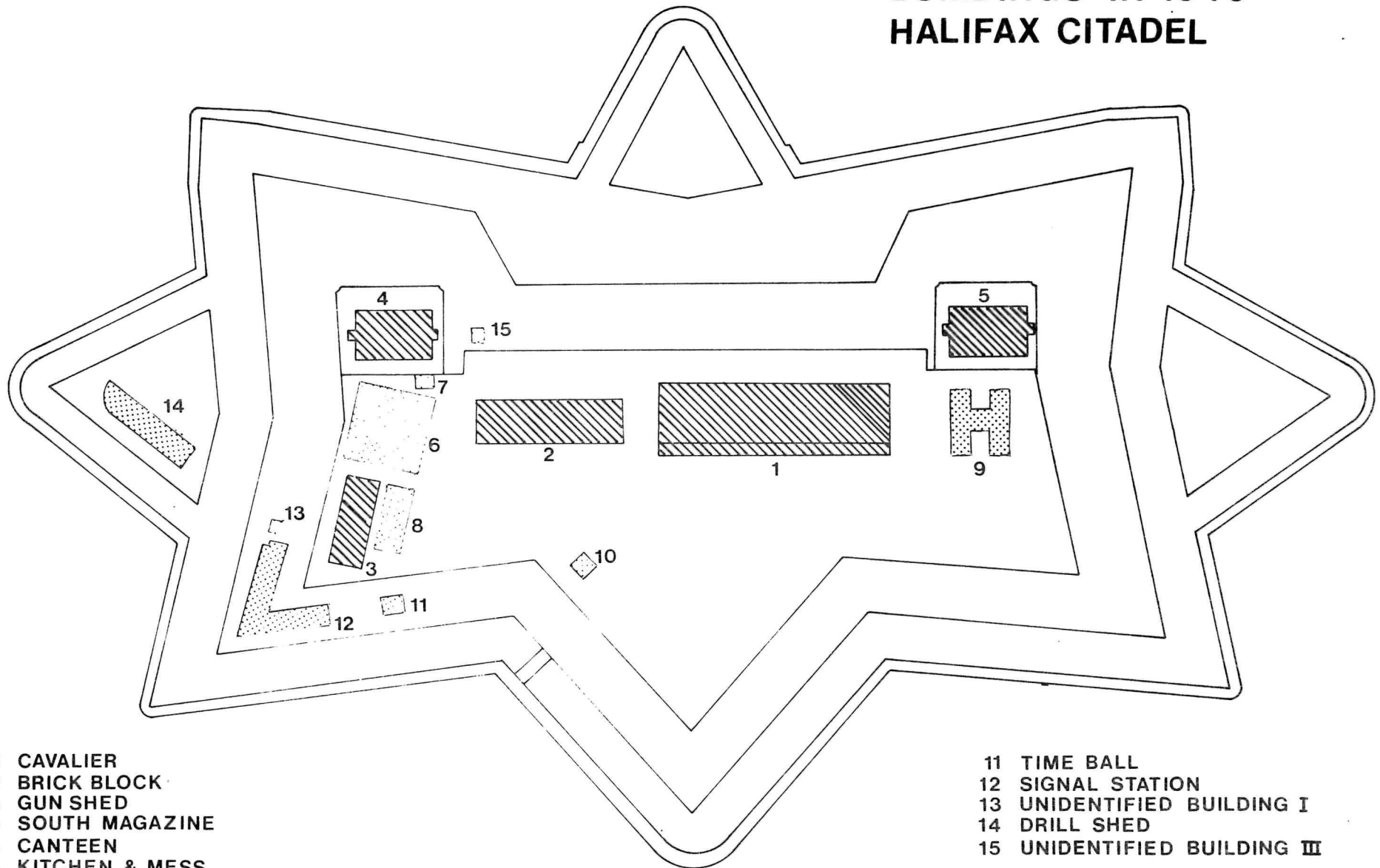
- 1 CAVALIER
- 2 BRICK BLOCK
- 3 GUN SHED
- 4 SOUTH MAGAZINE
- 5 CANTEEN
- 6 POSITION FINDER CELL
- 7 INSTRUMENT REPAIR SHOP
- 8 SIGNAL STATION
- 9 DEPRESSION RANGE FINDER PIT
- 10 DIRECTOR OF SIGNALS QUARTERS

- 11 P.F. INSTRUMENT ROOM
- 12 SIDEARM STORE
- 13 WHEELERS SHOP
- 14 SIDEARM STORE
- 15 REDAN UPPER STORY

- 8 Buildings in 1940. Ten buildings were constructed between 1906 and 1940 (indicated by dots) while five remained from the British period (indicated by diagonal lines.) (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)



# BUILDINGS IN 1940 HALIFAX CITADEL

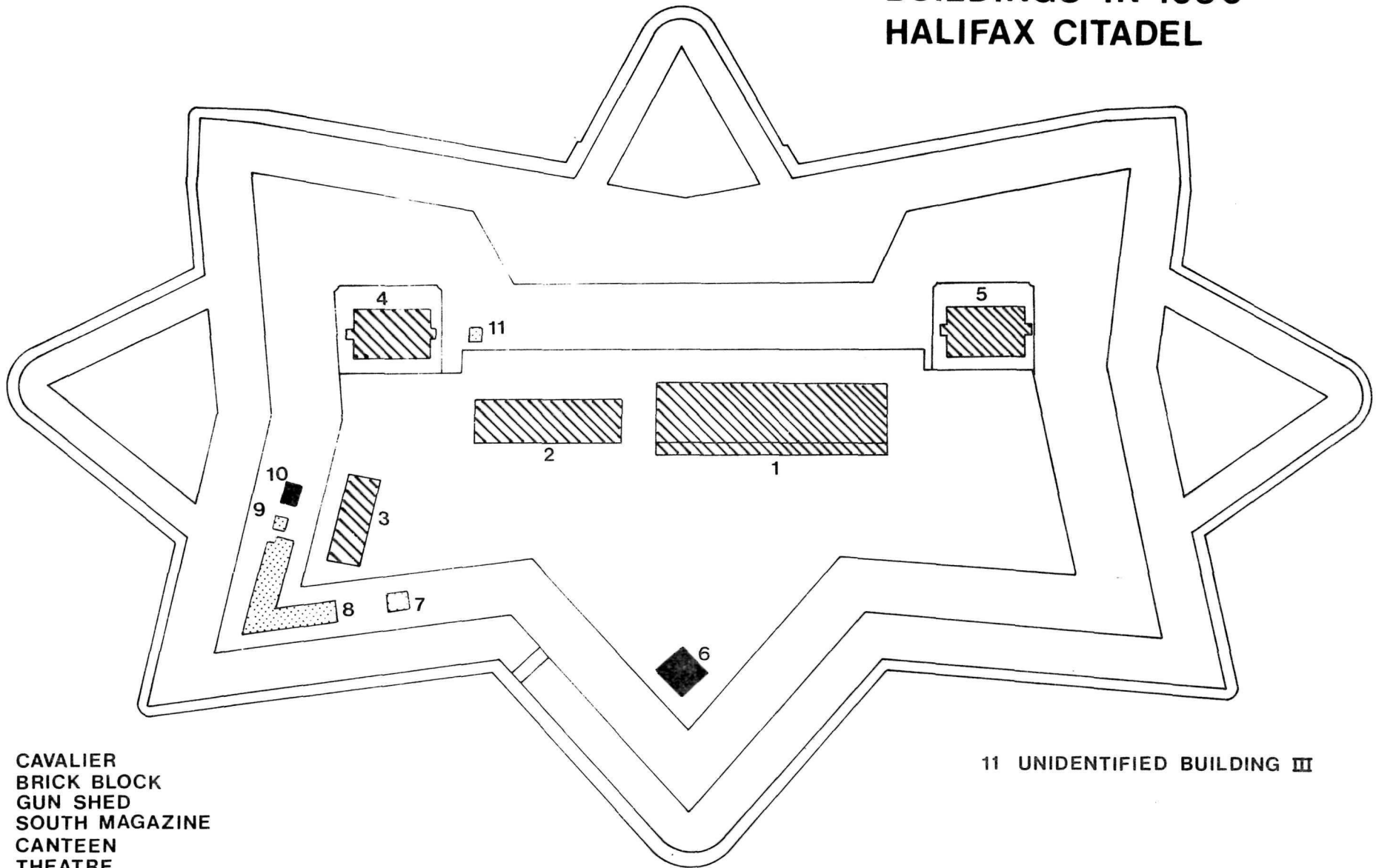


- 1 CAVALIER
- 2 BRICK BLOCK
- 3 GUN SHED
- 4 SOUTH MAGAZINE
- 5 CANTEEN
- 6 KITCHEN & MESS
- 7 LATRINE
- 8 JUNIOR N.C.O.s MESS
- 9 OFFICERS QUARTERS
- 10 HOSE HOUSE

- 11 TIME BALL
- 12 SIGNAL STATION
- 13 UNIDENTIFIED BUILDING I
- 14 DRILL SHED
- 15 UNIDENTIFIED BUILDING II

- 9 Buildings in 1950. Many of the buildings constructed between 1906 and 1940 had been removed by 1950. A theatre and an unidentified building were added between 1940 and 1950. (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)

# BUILDINGS IN 1950 HALIFAX CITADEL



- 1 CAVALIER
- 2 BRICK BLOCK
- 3 GUN SHED
- 4 SOUTH MAGAZINE
- 5 CANTEEN
- 6 THEATRE
- 7 TIME BALL
- 8 SIGNAL STATION
- 9 UNIDENTIFIED BUILDING I
- 10 UNIDENTIFIED BUILDING II

11 UNIDENTIFIED BUILDING III

## Buildings on the Parade

There were five masonry buildings on the parade when the Citadel was transferred in 1906. (See Figure 7). The Cavalier and the south magazine were the oldest buildings, dating from the 1830s and the 1840s, respectively. The Brick Block, the Canteen and the gun shed were relatively new buildings, having been built since 1900.

Six new buildings were erected on the parade during the Canadian period. All were of a temporary nature. Three substantial wooden buildings were constructed for use during World War II -- an Officers' Quarters, Kitchen and Mess, and Junior NCOs' Recreation Building. (See Figure 8). Two smaller buildings, a latrine and a hose house, also were located on the parade during the 1940s. An enclosed stage for an open-air theater was built in the corner of the redan in 1949. (See Figure 9).

### Cavalier

The Cavalier was a 70-year-old building with an assessed value of £7,225 when the Citadel was transferred to the Canadian government in 1906.<sup>1</sup> In 1908, some sergeants and 121 men were quartered in the building.<sup>2</sup> The Cavalier continued to be a barracks when in use during the Canadian period.

The Cavalier was part of the prisoner-of war camp which operated at the Citadel from September of 1914 to October of 1916. The prisoners' quarters in the Cavalier were not ready until January of 1915, when 30 cyclists and 72 army medical corps details were asked to vacate the building to make way for the prisoners.<sup>3</sup> Prisoners, servants and guards of the prison camp occupied all but five of the casemates in the Cavalier.<sup>4</sup>

The south end of the ground floor continued to be used by the Canadian army during World War I. Five casemates served as kitchens, dining rooms and a grocery bar. The operation of the grocery bar was not disturbed by

the prisoner-of-war camp - deliveries continued, and wives and children of the married men shopped as usual.<sup>5</sup> In 1915 arrangements were made to place all the prisoners in the Cavalier and to move the kitchen, dining rooms, and grocery bar to other casemates, but the plans do not seem to have been implemented. (See Prisoner-of-war camp).

An enclosed exercise area was provided on the parade for the Cavalier prisoners. The first barbed wire enclosure ran in front of Cavalier casemates 4, 5, 6, 7, and 10.<sup>6</sup> In the spring of 1915 the enclosed area was extended to the north and east of the Cavalier.<sup>7</sup>

The establishment of the Unemployment Relief Project in 1932 resulted in considerable work on the Cavalier.<sup>8</sup> Approval was received to repair broken windows and doors, to replace light sockets and plumbing, to overhaul the wiring and to install stoves, stove pipes, kitchen ranges and a hot water heater. Blocked doorways on the ground floor were opened to connect the kitchens and dining rooms. In 1935 corroded waterpipes were replaced with new iron pipes. Six dining rooms, two cookhouses, one ablution room and seven barrack rooms were provided for the men at the camp. (See Figure 5).

During the restoration programme at the Citadel in 1938-40, the roof of the Cavalier was removed.<sup>9</sup> The Mail Star expressed the hope that "the old Cavalier building will become a museum, eventually, housing interesting relics linked with the early days of the important military and naval 'outpost'."<sup>10</sup>

The use of the Cavalier during World War II is not revealed by the documentation available at this time. A newspaper article in the late 1940s states that it served as a cookhouse and dining room for army personnel stationed at the Citadel during the war.<sup>11</sup> However, there were messes in other buildings during World War II and it is probable that the reference was to World War I.

The Cavalier was in bad shape during World War II. In February of 1942 authorization was granted for repairs to eight rooms to provide additional accommodation at the Citadel for the A23 Coast and Anti-aircraft Artillery Training Center.<sup>12</sup> Stoves and stovepipes were to be provided, and repairs were to be made to doors, windows and electrical circuits. In March of 1944 the building was labelled "not suitable for occupancy".<sup>13</sup>

The verandah was gone by 1945.<sup>14</sup>

The building was condemned by January of 1946.<sup>15</sup> The Mail Star described the building as

...only a skeleton. Its walls, floors and roof have been removed in sections as the army needed the lumber for other purposes. Tossed helter-skelter about the building is the refuse from its partial demolition<sup>16</sup>

The Massey engineers considered the Cavalier to be "an impressive masonry structure suitable for restoration".<sup>17</sup> Complete restoration would have involved extensive work on the entire building, with a projected cost of \$59,200.

#### Cavalier Casemates

There are seven casemates in the Cavalier. In this report the ground-floor levels of the seven are referred to as CC1 to CC7 while the second floor levels are referred to as CC1A to CC7A. (See Figure 41). Two single-storey casemates are located at both ends of the building; CC8 and CC9 are at the south end and CC10 and CC11 are at the north end. The arches of Cavalier casemates 8, 9, 10 and 11 run in the opposite direction to the arches of the seven two-storey casemates. The height of the end casemates is greater than that of the ground floor casemates.

#### *C.C.1*

Cavalier casemate 1 was a barrack room for 11 men in 1908. By 1915 it was a dining room for 60 men of the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery and the First Coast Artillery. It continued to serve as a dining room in 1922, 1925 and during the Unemployment Relief Project.

By 1908 the two doors between CC1 and CC2 had been blocked.<sup>18</sup> Wooden sheathing in CC1 covered the opening at the west end of the party wall while masonry in CC2 closed the opening at the east end. An opening had been made in the opposite wall, however, and access provided into the rear cookhouses, CC9. There was a small vestibule inside the front door.

By 1922, the vestibule had been removed and the two doorways had been

opened in the party wall shared with CC2.<sup>19</sup> In 1924 and 1925 the opening at the west end was blocked again, this time by a partition midway through the opening.<sup>20</sup>

#### *C.C. 2*

Cavalier casemate 2 was a barrack room for 11 men in 1908. It was a dining room for 60 men of the First Coast Artillery in 1915 and for the men of the Unemployment Relief Project in 1932. In 1922 and 1925 it was the storeroom for the adjoining grocery bar.

In 1908 there was a small vestibule at the front door.<sup>21</sup> The two doorways into CC1 and the two doorways into CC3 were blocked. The front door into CC3 remained closed in 1921, 1922, and 1925 but was open in 1924.<sup>22</sup> Although the two doorways into CC1 were open by 1922, the one at the back was blocked again in 1924 and 1925. The vestibule was removed between 1922 and 1924.

#### *C.C. 3*

Cavalier casemate 3 was described as a dry canteen in 1908 and as a grocery bar in 1915, 1922 and 1925. In 1932 it was one of the dining rooms of the Unemployment Relief Project.

In 1908, 1921 and 1922 there were shelves and cases on the two side walls.<sup>23</sup> In 1908 there was a counter perpendicular to the north wall and shelving or another type of furniture in the center of the room. By 1921 the center shelving had been removed and a counter was on the front wall, to the right of the door.

There was no interior access to the two neighbouring casemates in 1908, 1921, and 1922 and 1925. A blocked arched doorway at the east end of the north wall appears in section on a cavalier plan in 1925. (See Figure 14). Two doorways into CC4 and one into CC2 are shown on a 1924 plan.<sup>24</sup>

#### *C.C. 4*

Cavalier casemate 4 was an ablution and bathroom during the Canadian

period. It served Canadian troops in 1908, 1922 and 1925, German prisoners and their guards during World War I and unemployed men at the relief camp in the 1930s.

There was a door in the back wall of the casemate in 1908.<sup>25</sup> A hall ran between the front and back doors. Two baths, in separate cubicles, were situated against the hall partition. Built-in furniture, possibly a table or shelves, ran the length of the north pier wall.

The arrangement of the ablution and bathroom changed sometime between 1908 and 1922.<sup>26</sup> The back door was converted to a window and the hall was removed. Two cubicles were located in both back corners and a vestibule at the front door. Furnishings were situated in the center of the casemate.

At the beginning of the prisoner-of-war camp, prisoners and guards shared the toilet and bath facilities in CC4.<sup>27</sup> A recommendation to create a separate guards' lavatory in another casemate was overruled. The District Officer Commanding felt that prisoners and guards could share the same facilities, since both groups were officers. Separate lavatory accommodation for the guards was authorized in August of 1915 but the location was not given.<sup>28</sup>

The ablution room was renovated for the prisoner-of-war camp.<sup>29</sup> On 20 April 1915 the General Officer Commanding ordered that a full partition be added to make a bathroom for the officer prisoners' servants at the back of the casemate. A wash-basin and toilet were to be connected to drains under the concrete floor and a doorway was to be cut through the west end of the north pier wall. The sides of the doorway were to be cemented and door frames and a door added. Although the renovations were reported to have been completed in early May, the new door into CC5 does not appear on later plans.

There was no interior connection between Cavalier casemate 4 and the two adjacent casemates in 1908 and 1922.<sup>30</sup> The 1924 plan shows two doorways into CC3 and one arched doorway into CC5.<sup>31</sup> On the 1925 plan the doorway at the east end of the south wall is blocked but the others remain open. (See Figure 14).

In the months between the departure of the Canadian troops in 1931 and the beginning of the Relief Camp, the plumbing at the Citadel was "ruthlessly smashed" by vandals.<sup>32</sup> Extensive repairs and replacement were



necessary in the Cavalier ablution room in 1932. There were showers and four toilets in the casemate for the use of both the men in the Cavalier and some of the men in the redan.<sup>33</sup>

It seems that the casemate was still in use during World War II. A very inexact plan, circa 1940, labels the center casemate, "Lavatory".<sup>34</sup>

#### *C.C. 5*

Cavalier casemate 5 was a barrack room in 1908, 1922 and 1925. It accommodated 11 men in 1908 and members of the Royal Canadian Regiment in 1922. Servants for the German officers were quartered in the casemate in 1915. In 1932 it was a dining room for the Unemployment Relief camp.

In 1908 and 1922 there was a vestibule at the front door, the only entrance to the casemate.<sup>35</sup> Doorways opened into CC4 and CC6 in 1924.<sup>36</sup> In 1925 the doorway into the cooks' room, CC6, was blocked. (See Figure 14).

#### *C.C. 6*

Cavalier casemate 6 had a variety of uses during the Canadian period. Eleven men were quartered there in 1908. During the prisoner-of-war camp it was a guard room for ten men and later a prisoners' dining room. In 1922 and 1925 it was a cooks' room and in 1932 it was a dining room for the Unemployment Relief camp.

There was a vestibule at the front door in 1908.<sup>37</sup> A doorway at the east end of the party wall connected CC6 and CC7 in 1908, 1922, 1924 and 1925.<sup>38</sup> The doorway at the east end of the other side wall of CC6 was blocked in 1908, 1922 and 1924 but was open in 1925.

#### *C.C. 7*

Cavalier casemate 7 was a barrack room in 1908 and a dining room when in use during the remainder of the Canadian period. It was a dining and barrack room for six guards of the prisoner-of-war camp and later a dining room for prisoners. It continued to be a dining room in 1922, 1925 and 1932, serving the Royal Canadian Regiment in 1925 and the Unemployment Relief Project in 1932.

There was a vestibule at the front door in 1908 and 1922. The Cavalier plans from 1908 to 1945 show a door into CC6 at the east end of the south wall and a diagonal passageway through the thickness of the north wall into the front cookhouse, CC10.<sup>39</sup>

#### *C.C. 8 and C.C. 9*

Cavalier casemates 8 and 9 were cookhouses in 1908, 1915, 1922, 1925 and 1932. In 1915 they were kitchens for about 140 men of the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery and 1st. Coast Artillery. In 1932 they were kitchens for the Unemployment Relief Project.

There were three doors in CC8 & CC9 - one in the front wall of CC8, one in the party wall between CC8 and CC9 and one in the north wall of CC9.<sup>40</sup> Two windows with a third centered above were located on the south wall of CC8, and three windows with a fourth centered above were on the south wall of CC9. (See Figure 12). There was one window in the back wall of CC9.

#### *C.C. 10 and C.C. 11*

Cavalier casemates 10 and 11 were cookhouses in 1908, 1915, 1922, 1925 and 1932. They were kitchens for the prisoner-of-war camp and for the Unemployment Relief camp.

There was a door in the front and south walls of CC10, and in the party wall between CC10 and CC11.<sup>41</sup> There were two windows with a window centered above in the north wall of both casemates. There was one window in the back wall of CC11.

#### *C.C. 1A to C.C. 7A*

The upper floor of each of the seven two-storey casemates was a barrack room in 1908, 1915, 1922, 1925, and 1932. Accommodation for 11 men per casemate was provided for Canadian soldiers in 1908, for German prisoners in 1915 and for men of the relief camp in 1932.

All of the casemates had two windows and a central fireplace on the

back wall, and a window and a door in the front wall.<sup>42</sup> In 1908 there was a vestibule at each entrance. All but two of the vestibules had been removed by 1922; one remained in CC1A and the one in CC3A had been enlarged.

There was a doorway in the east end of each of the six pier walls between the casemates. The doorways were blocked in 1908 and 1922 but were open in 1924 and 1925.<sup>43</sup> Sections drawn on plans of the Cavalier in 1924 and 1925 show that the tops of the doorways between CC3 and CC4 and CC5 were in the shape of a truncated triangle. (See Figure 14).

Structural details for the interiors of two of the second-floor rooms are supplied by photographs taken during the prisoner-of-war camp. The walls and arches of the casemates were either painted or whitewashed. Shelving units of two shelves and a coatrack were attached to the side walls. A stove is shown in the center of one casemate while a stovepipe in the other casemate runs down the center of the room and into the back wall. The fireplace in the latter casemate had a cast-iron front and a visible relieving arch. A shelf with two brackets was positioned above the fireplace, between the two back windows. What seems to be an alarm bell is seen beside the right window. (See Figure 1 and 2).

### Third Floor

The construction of a pitch roof in 1924-25 created a third floor over the Cavalier's seven two-storey casemates.<sup>44</sup> It was proposed to use most of the space for a lecture and recreation room, 128 ft. 5 in. by 19 ft. 10 in. The north end, including the north dormers on both slopes, was to be divided into two rooms, 23 ft. 8 in. long, both to accommodate two single sergeants. Three niches on the east wall of the long room were either fireplaces or locations for stoves. (See Figure 14).

When the arrangements were being made for the Unemployment Relief camp, there was a proposal to provide stoves for the third floor so that the long room could be used for recreational purposes.<sup>45</sup> The idea was abandoned in subsequent cost cuts.

The third floor and pitch roof were removed in February and March of 1939.<sup>46</sup>

#### Rooms over South Cookhouses

Three rooms were located over the south cookhouses, CC8 and CC9. There were two rooms on the south wall, a hall on the north wall and a room at the west end of the hall. The dimensions of the rooms in 1915 were 13.6 ft. by 10 ft., 15 ft. by 10 ft. and 16 ft. by 13 ft.<sup>47</sup> Entrance to the middle room was through the room to the left of the exterior door.

Single sergeants occupied the three rooms in 1908.<sup>48</sup> In 1915 the rooms were whitewashed and painted in preparation for possible use by the prisoners of war.<sup>49</sup> The plan of the Cavalier in 1915 describes the three rooms as "Space here for baggage". In 1922 and 1925 a shoemaker was occupying the large room.<sup>50</sup> Stores were kept in the two small rooms in 1925. (See Figure 14).

The plan for the third floor over the main body of the Cavalier in 1924-1925 included a set of steps through the south end wall to the rooms above the south cookhouses. (See Figure 14). The opening in the wall also appears on 1908 and 1922 plans and apparently was the means of access to the earlier flat roof.<sup>51</sup>

#### Rooms over North Cookhouses

In 1908 the space over the north cookhouses, CC10 and CC11, was divided by what seems to be a masonry partition. Staff sergeants were quartered in the two rooms.

At the beginning of the prisoner-of-war camp, six officers were living over the north cookhouses.<sup>52</sup> There were plans to remove the officers and to place the Commandant and his staff in the rooms. The plan assumed that there were three rooms over the north cookhouses, as there were over the south cookhouses. This assumption seems to have been incorrect, as only two rooms were shown on plans in 1908 and 1922.

A hallway had been added by 1922.<sup>53</sup> A partition ran between the front wall and centre partition, creating a hallway along the south wall of the front room. No use is given for the rooms in 1922. NCOs were living in them in 1925. (See Figure 14).

When the third floor was added to the main body of the Cavalier, in 1924-25, steps were built through the south wall to two new rooms for single sergeants.

## Verandah

A two-storey wooden verandah was located on the front of the Cavalier. At both ends of the verandah were enclosed three-storey structures which provided access to the rooms over the cookhouses, and, at the north end, to the second floor of the Cavalier. Stairs were located in the two end structures and in the center of the verandah. The third storey of the south end structure and the top two storeys of the north end structure were divided into rooms.

The first two floors of the south structure were enclosed by south and east walls but were open on the north side which faced the verandah.<sup>54</sup> The third floor was twice the length of the lower floors, was enclosed on all sides and had a room adjacent to the stairs. There was a window with ten panes, five over five, on the south wall on all three floors during the early years of the Canadian period. (See Figure 11). The third floor also had a sash window, six over six, in the east wall and a window in the north wall.

In the summer of 1915 there was a proposal to renovate the south end of the verandah.<sup>55</sup> The details are vague and confusing. The steps between the ground floor and second floor were to be removed, and the empty stairwell on the second floor was to be extended and a north wall added to create a reading room. Possibly the ground floor was to be given the same treatment. Confusion arises when the comment is made that the alterations "will provide 4 Rooms 10' x 9' 4" over verandah". Possibly it is referring to two rooms on both the upper two storeys of the south end.

It is possible that the south stairway between the second and third floors was removed when the prisoners of war were living on the second floor of the Cavalier. Access to the roof would have to have been prevented, for, by June of 1915, the doors were left unlocked and the sentry had been removed from the verandah. In June there was a proposal to build stairs to the roof and to the three rooms above the south cookhouses, suggesting that there were no stairs in this location at that time.

The changes proposed in 1915 were not implemented. The 1908, 1922, 1924 and 1925 plans are basically the same for the south end of the verandah.<sup>56</sup>

The south end of the verandah was altered by 1928. The end structure was covered with vertical revetting, the second storey was enlarged and the

windows were altered. Only two small windows remained - one on the south wall and one on the east wall of the second storey. (See Figure 12).

The structure at the north end of the verandah was more closely associated with the main body of the Cavalier than with the verandah. It was enclosed on all three sides and the only access was from the parade. (See Figure 10). There was a door and a window in the east wall on the ground floor and three sash windows, four over four, on the other two storeys. The ground floor of the enclosure was only large enough to accommodate stairs while the top two floors were larger, measuring approximately 23 feet by 10 feet.<sup>57</sup>

A partition was situated beside the stairs on the second and third floors of the north structure. The space south of the partition on the second floor was occupied by sergeants in 1908 and by a tailor, RCR, in 1922. The space on the third floor was sergeants' quarters in 1908 and an anteroom in 1925. A bathroom had been installed on the third floor and was vented through the roof. (See Figure 10). The third floor was heated by a stove which had a stovepipe in the south wall.

There was a one-storey lean-to on the north wall of the verandah. (See Figure 10). It measured approximately 8 ft. by 5 ft., and had a sloped roof, a window in the east wall, and a door in the south wall. In November of 1938 a building attached to the Cavalier was torn down; it was larger than the lean-to, however, for the dimensions given for the structure were 10 ft. by 10 ft. by 45 ft.<sup>58</sup>

The central staircase between the two floors of the verandah was located in front of CC4. A railing ran up the stairs and around the stairwell on the second floor in front of CC4A and CC5A. (See Figures 12 and 14).

The roof of the Cavalier verandah had a clocktower and 11 skylights at the beginning of the Canadian period. (See Figure 11). The skylights were removed between 1922 and 1925, probably when the Cavalier roof was replaced.<sup>59</sup> The clocktower had a cornice and a pitch roof. (See Figures 11 and 12). The face of the clock was round in 1918 and square in 1928. There was a ladder to the clocktower in front of CC4A; in 1918 it was freestanding and in 1928 it was attached to the wall.

The wooden verandah and the end structures were gone by 1945.<sup>60</sup> Only the bottom wooden floor remained. The absence of the verandah contributed

to the derelict appearance of the Cavalier in the Massey photographs in 1950. (See Figure 13).

#### Exterior Masonry Walls

The Cavalier is an ironstone building with cutstone quoins and surrounds. In 1918 the surrounds on the east wall were either whitewashed or painted. (See Figure 11). Some of the ironstone was also included in this treatment, for the painting or whitewash ran straight down the outside edge of the larger stones and covered the area under the window, down to floor level. In 1927, 1928 and 1936 all of the wall facing the verandah was either painted or whitewashed.<sup>61</sup> (See Figure 12).

There was a need for work on the exterior walls during the Canadian period. The Unemployment Relief Project pointed the back and end walls.<sup>62</sup> In 1936 the back wall was in poor condition and out of plumb.<sup>63</sup> The Cavalier walls required repairs and more pointing. In 1950 pointing was still required.<sup>64</sup> By 1950 the door surrounds of CC3A and CC5A had been repaired with ironstone. (See Figure 13).

The window and door openings remained the same throughout the period, with one exception. There was one door and one window in the east wall on both storeys for each of the seven two-storey casemates. (See Figure 13). Four other doors on the front wall opened into CC8 and CC10 and the rooms over them. The south wall had three windows for CC8, four windows for CC9 and three windows for the rooms above. (See Figure 12). The north wall had two windows for CC10, two windows for CC11 and four for the upper rooms.<sup>65</sup> The upper north windows were in pairs with a narrow pier between the windows in each pair, creating two rather than four interior openings. The west wall had a door into CC9 and a window for CC11. At the beginning of the period, both storeys of each casemate had two windows in the west wall, with the exception of CC4.

In 1908 there was a door in the back or west wall of Cavalier casemate 4. A wooden porch was located outside the opening in 1908 and 1922.<sup>66</sup> By 1922, however, the opening had been converted to a window and appears as such on all later plans, sections and elevations.

There were storm windows on the Cavalier in 1915; there was a complaint

in late June that "the double windows have not yet been removed".<sup>67</sup> There were also windows in the exterior doors on the second floor at this time. A proposal was made to replace the windows in the doors with sliding sashes for better ventilation. This was rejected because there were windows on the same wall. The windows in the prisoners' rooms would have had bars.

The style of window changed during the period. In 1924 and 1925 the back windows in CC3, CC3A, CC4, CC4A, CC5 and CC5A were sash windows, six over six.<sup>68</sup> By 1945 the windows in the back wall of the building were two-leaf casements.<sup>69</sup> One leaf of a casement window with three panes of glass is shown in CC7A in one of the 1950 photographs.<sup>70</sup>

#### Roof

During the Canadian period there were three different roofs on the main body of the Cavalier, over the two-storey casemates between the cookhouses. The first roof dated from the British period and was destroyed during a storm on 9 October 1924.<sup>71</sup> It was replaced with a pitch roof which was later dismantled in February and March of 1939.<sup>72</sup> No other wooden structure was built. The Cavalier had a flat, and possibly gravel, roof for the rest of the period.

The first roof was built on two masonry parapets and supported by vertical braces.<sup>73</sup> The slope was so slight that the roof was almost flat. (See Figure 11). When the prisoners of war were in the Cavalier there was a proposal to build a staircase to the roof and to construct a boardwalk on the roof so that the prisoners could get exercise.<sup>74</sup> The plan was rejected for security reasons.

The construction of the second roof created a third floor over the casemates. (See Figures 12 and 14). The roof was pitched and had four dormers, 10 ft. wide and 6 ft. 11 in. deep, on both the front and back slopes.<sup>75</sup> There were three sash windows, four over four, in each of the dormers. The roof was constructed of closely-space **a trusses**, 2 in. by 8 in. supported by diagonal and vertical bracing.<sup>76</sup> The wall plate was 4 in. by 6 in. and was held by iron anchors set in concrete at 10 ft. centers. The roof was covered by 7/8 in. tongue and groove sheathing and 3-ply fibre weld roofing. The parapet walls of the first roof had been dismantled.



The end walls of the first and seventh two-storey casemates were built up to form gable ends under the pitch roof. The gable ends may have been brick, for brick was salvaged for reuse in restoration work when the roof was dismantled in 1939.<sup>77</sup> The roof had been in disrepair since at least November of 1936, when it was reported that patching was required to prevent leaks.<sup>78</sup>

Almost nothing is known about the third roof. It had a flat surface, possibly gravelled, for the rest of the period. (See Figure 13).

Cavalier Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Table 1

Ground Floor

[79]

Casemate Number	1908	1915	1922	1925	1932
CC1	11 men	Dining Room 60 men RCGA <sup>o</sup> & 1 <sup>st</sup> C.A.	Dining Room	Dining Room	URP* Dining Room
CC2	11 men	Dining Room 60 men 1 <sup>st</sup> C.A.	Grocery Store Rm	Grocery Store Room	U.R.P. Dining Room
CC3	Dry canteen	R.C.G.A. Grocery Bar	Grocery Bar	Grocery Bar	U.R.P. Dining Room
CC4	Ablution Bath Room	Ablution Room Prisoners	Ablution & Bath	Ablution Room	U.R.P. Ablution Room
CC5	11 men	German Prisoners -servants	Barrack R.C.R.	Barrack Rm	U.R.P. Dining Room
CC6	11 men	Guard Room 10 men	Cooks R.C.R.	Cooks Room	U.R.P. Dining Room
CC7	11 men	Guard - Dining & Barrack Rm (6 men)	Dining Room R.C.R.	Dining Room	U.R.P. Dining Room

<sup>o</sup> - Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery

\* - Unemployment Relief Project

Cavalier Casemate Use, Canadian Period  
Ground Floor

Casemate Number	1908	1915	1922	1925	1932
CC8	Cook House	Kitchen R.C.G.A. & 1st. C.G.A. men (about 140 men)	Cook House	Cook House	U.R.P. Kitchen
CC9	Cook House		Cook House	Cook House	U.R.P. Kitchen
CC10	Cook House	Kitchen German Prisoners	Cook House	Cook House	U.R.P. Kitchen
CC11	Cook House		Cook House	Cook House	U.R.P. Kitchen

Cavalier Casemate Use, Canadian Period  
Ground Floor

Casemate Number	1908	1915	1922	1925	1932
CC1A	11 men	Barrack Room -German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC2A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC3A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC4A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC5A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC6A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men
CC7A	11 men	Barrack Room German Prisoners	Barrack, RCR	Barrack Room	U. R. P. Barrack -11 men

### Brick Block

The Brick Block or New Block was one of the few new, modern buildings at the Citadel when the property was transferred to the Canadian government in 1906. (See Figure 7). The building had been constructed between May of 1899 and March of 1900 at a cost of £8104.<sup>80</sup> Its assessed value about the time of transfer was £7,345.<sup>81</sup>

The Brick Block was a three-storey barracks, designed for 102 men and three non-commissioned officers, and provided accommodation definitely superior to that in the casemates and the Cavalier.<sup>82</sup> It is possible that the Canadian troops maintained a continuous occupation of the Brick Block between 1906 and 1931.

The Unemployment Relief Project reopened the Brick Block and provided quarters for 102 men in 1932. (See Figure 5). Repairs were necessary to prepare the building for reoccupation; requirements included overhauling the electrical wiring and the heating system, installing plumbing and a water heater and making minor repairs.<sup>83</sup> In 1935 new iron pipes were installed.<sup>84</sup>

When transfer of ownership was being discussed with the Department of the Interior in the months following the end of the Unemployment Relief Project in 1936, the Department of National Defence wanted to retain the Brick Block. The building was still considered to be a "comparatively modern brick barracks".<sup>85</sup>

One of the possibilities considered for guarding the Citadel in 1936 was to provide quarters in the Brick Block for a married soldier who would act as a caretaker. The building was unsuitable, however, as there were no cooking facilities, and one hot-water system served the entire building. The idea was rejected when it was estimated that \$1,100 would be required to install a cooking range, heating stoves, plumbing fixtures and partitions.<sup>86</sup>

In 1938 there was a proposal to renovate the Brick Block for the use of the Royal Canadian Air Force.<sup>87</sup> Sections of walls were to be removed, windows were to be blocked and a number of partitions were to be added to create new rooms, armament room, dark room and rigging and instruction room on the ground floor. A sergeants' mess and bar, wireless and signals room, medical inspection room and rooms for the commanding officer, adjutant, flight commander, orderly and medical officer were proposed for the second

floor. The third floor was to be used as an officers' mess, bar, kitchen, lecture and billiard room. No action was taken on the proposal.

The Brick Block was a barracks during World War II. It was occupied by men at the Citadel's Coast and Anti-aircraft Artillery Training Center in 1942 and by No. 1 Works Company R.C.E. in 1943.<sup>88</sup> In March of 1944 it was reported that the building contained quarters for 148 men.<sup>89</sup> In March of 1945 a recommendation was made to turn over the barracks to No. 6 Engineer Services and Works Company, R.C.E.<sup>90</sup> The R.C.E. were in residence in January of 1946 and planned to vacate by 31 August 1946 in preparation for the transfer of the property to the Department of Mines and Resources.<sup>91</sup>

When the Brick Block was vacated in 1946 the building was partially stripped to prevent vandalism.<sup>92</sup> The removal of heat caused the paint to peel. Sections of the floor needed replacing by July of 1947. A newspaper article describing the deplorable condition of the Citadel stated:

A three story [sic] brick building... is strewn with more rubble--- broken plaster, empty cans, rusted pipes and pieces of old machinery.

In what was once washrooms, a few porcelain basins of modern design are still in place, some with taps and some without.

Everywhere bits of water pipe are dangling from walls, and ceilings or sticking out of twisted floors.<sup>93</sup>

The Department of National Defence requested the retention of the Brick Block for the Reserve Force in its negotiations with the Department of Mines and Resources in May of 1947.<sup>94</sup> In July of 1947 a submission was made for \$5,200 to renovate the first two floors of the Brick Block to accommodate the 30 Field Park Company, R.C.E., Reserve Force.<sup>95</sup> Nothing was done by mid-September and the estimated cost increased by 25 per cent.<sup>96</sup> By October 1947, it was decided that the third floor was also required and \$1,200 was added to the estimate.<sup>97</sup>

It seems that eventually repairs were made. The excellent condition of the exterior stands out in contrast to its dilapidated surroundings in photographs in 1950. (See Figures 24 and 35). The Reserve Force R.C.E. was using and maintaining the Brick Block when the Massey engineers examined the Citadel in 1950.

The reserve force was still using one building, presumably the Brick Block, when the Citadel was declared a national historic site in May of 1951.<sup>98</sup> It seems that the two Citadel caretakers were living in the building the following July and September.<sup>99</sup> Development plans for the new site did not include the Brick Block, and the building was demolished in 1953.<sup>100</sup>

### Structural Details

The Brick Block was a three-storey brick building with a pediment and a pitch roof. (See Figures 10 and 32). Dimensions given for the building vary between 131 ft. 2 in. by 34 ft. and 130 ft. by 35 ft.<sup>101</sup> Because the Brick Block will be discussed in a report on the late British period, 1860 to 1906, only a brief outline of the structural details will be given here.

The floorplan was the same on all three storeys. The interior design of the Brick Block was simple and efficient. (See Figure 15). A corridor ran the length of the building, along the front or east wall. A night urinal and another small room, usually a broom closet, were located at both ends of the corridors. Most of the floorspace was used for two large barrack rooms for 17 men on each floor. The center of the building was a core area, containing the stairs, an ablution room, bathroom, N.C.O.'s room, and a store room on each floor. A basement, 30 ft. 8 in. by 26 ft. 2 in., was located under the center area and held a furnace, coal and a pump.<sup>102</sup>

There were ten west windows on each storey plus two windows on the landings. Four windows were located on the two end walls on all three storeys. There were eight windows in the front wall of the ground floor and nine on the upper two storeys. The only exterior door in the Brick Block was centered on the east wall and was enclosed by a brick one-storey porch.

Plans of the ground floor in 1905 and 1914 show two-leaf casement windows in the two barrack rooms and double-hung sash window on the exterior walls of the corridor and other rooms.<sup>103</sup> In 1950 the barrack-room windows on the third floor were sash windows, six over six, on the south wall and four over four on the west wall, as shown on the 1901 record

plan.<sup>104</sup> The smaller windows on the south wall, at the end of the corridor, were also sash, two over two.

### Gun Shed

A new gun shed was built on the parade in the corner of the southeast salient at the end of the British period, at a cost of £742.14s.1d.<sup>105</sup> Construction started on 15 January 1902 and finished on 10 April 1903. The assessed value at the beginning of the Canadian period was £715.<sup>106</sup>

The gun shed held the guns used at the saluting battery on the east slope of Citadel Hill. There were six 15-pounder breech loaders during the British period. The guns of the Canadian Saluting battery were also kept in the gun shed. The Canadian Army Battery consisted of an undetermined number of 18-pounders and, later in the period, of four quick-fire 25-pounders.<sup>107</sup>

The building was in continuous use while the Canadian forces occupied the Citadel between 1906 and 1931; it was described as a gun shed on plans between 1907 and 1930.<sup>108</sup> The west end was used for storage and was a R.A. store in 1908 and 1922.

In 1932 the gun shed was designated "R.C.E. Office and Stores" for the Unemployment Relief Project. (See Figure 5). The only significant cost involved in preparing the building was for the installation of a stove and stovepipe.<sup>109</sup>

In April of 1936 the Citadel remained an official saluting station and the guns were still stored on the site.<sup>110</sup> The Department of National Defence planned to retain the gun shed and the saluting battery in the event of a transfer of the Citadel to the Department of the Interior in 1936. The gun shed and saluting battery continued to operate until World War II when the four quick-fire 25-pounders of the saluting battery were moved to Royal Artillery Park.<sup>111</sup>

In circa 1940 the west end, which previously was used for stores, was a dry canteen.<sup>112</sup> The east end was described as a "M.G.", possibly meaning that it was used to store machine guns. In January of 1946 the RCE No. 6 were using the gun shed for storage.<sup>113</sup>

A decision was made to re-institute the saluting battery in 1946.<sup>114</sup>

At the same time, authority was granted for the hand-over of the gun shed from Military District No. 6, Halifax, N.S. to Headquarters, Fixed Defences, East Coast, R.C.A., Halifax. Submissions were made for major repairs and alterations to the gun shed and for the demolition of the building where the gun battery was stored at Royal Artillery Park. The justification for the proposed work on the gun shed was that the guns were a show battery and adequate accommodation was required to maintain and protect them. The work was not done in 1946 and another submission was made for funds in 1947-48.<sup>115</sup>

When the Department of National Defence was negotiating a transfer of the Citadel to either the city or the Department of Mines and Resources in 1947, the plan, once again, was to retain the gun shed.<sup>116</sup> The retention was not necessarily to be permanent, however, for mention was made of the possibility of acquiring another building to store the saluting battery equipment.

The Massey engineers reported that the "garage/gun shed" was being used and maintained in 1950.<sup>117</sup>

#### Structural Details

The gun shed was a brick, one-storey building, 22 ft. by 70 ft. 8 in. It was built on a foundation which was 2 ft. thick and at least 4 ft. below groundlevel. The building was divided into two areas - a room, 20 ft. by 48 ft., used for the storage of the guns, and a store room, 20 ft. square. There was no interior connection between the two rooms. (See Figure 16).

The store room was at the west end of the building.<sup>118</sup> It had a ceiling and a wood block floor. The room was heated by a stove which stood on a masonry pad adjacent to the west wall. Shelves and tables were built in the northwest corner and along the east and south walls. There were two windows in the west wall and two windows and a door in the north wall. The west windows were 3 ft. by 3 ft., with nine panes of glass. The north windows were 4 ft. by 3 ft. and also had nine panes.

There were six double doors, each 8 ft. wide, in the north wall of the gun storage room. One window, 4 ft. by 3 ft., with eight panes of glass, was located in the east wall. The floor was built on six inches of stone packing and five inches of concrete and had a slope of 1 in 80 to the gutter in front



of the building. The material for the floor is not known.

There was a pitch roof of modern design on the gun shed. The roof was covered with one inch boarding laid diagonally.<sup>119</sup> The 1904 record plan states that the building had a slate roof.<sup>120</sup> In 1913 there was a proposal to reroof the building with "slate surfaced asphalt shingles".<sup>121</sup> Work was needed on the roof in 1946; funds were requested for 18 in. slate surfaced roofing.<sup>122</sup> This type of roofing is what seems to be shown in the 1950 photos.<sup>123</sup> There was a chimney on the west end of the roof.

Alterations were proposed in 1913.<sup>124</sup> The suggested changes included reroofing, renewing the eavestrough and opening a door between the gun and store rooms. A magazine was to be built in the southwest corner of the storeroom and the south window in the west wall was to be bricked in. The changes were not implemented, as the plan of the building in 1922 is the same as earlier plans.

Submissions were made for repairs from the 1946-47 and 1947-48 allotments of funds.<sup>125</sup> A sum of \$3000 was requested in 1947-48. It was proposed to build a magazine in the southwest corner of the gun room and a boiler room for a hot air furnace in the southwest corner of the storeroom. Other proposals included building a new roof, double doors and work benches, rewiring, replacing the floor of the gun room with mulsomastic flooring and painting the roof trusses. A door was to be cut between the two rooms and an exterior door added to the south wall.

There is little obvious difference in the exterior of the building in photographs taken in 1928 and 1950. The change from slate to asphalt shingles can be noted. By 1950 there was a small roof extending over the east section of the north wall. (See Figures 10 and 24).

#### Associated Features

A masonry pad, approximately 4 1/2 ft. wide, ran along the outside of the north wall of the gun shed. (See Figure 10). It was at the same level as the floor of the gun room. On the pad were five "curbs", 2 ft. 3/4 in. wide, which ran into the gun shed, under five door jambs in the north wall. Seven iron gate stops for the six double doors of the gun room were spaced at eight-foot intervals. Also on the pad was a pump which apparently drew



water from the rainwater tank under the parade.

A washing platform for the guns was situated in front of the gun shed. It was 18 ft. 2 in. by 15 ft. There was a granite curb on the edge of the washing platform and the gutter which ran around part of the building.

It seems that the gutter ran along the west wall, along the north wall, (between the washing platform and the pad) and out into the surface drain in front of the east retaining wall of the southeast salient.<sup>126</sup> Another gutter at the southeast corner of the building ran into the same drain.

### Canteen

A brick building was built on the site of the north magazine between 15 May 1901 and 17 February 1902.<sup>127</sup> The granite wall of the magazine served as the foundation for the building, creating a cellar above ground level and a ground floor which was a full storey above the parade. The cost of construction was £2721.

The building served as either a canteen or a recreation and mess establishment throughout the Canadian period. Plans of the Citadel refer to the building as a canteen in 1907, 1908, circa 1910, 1916, 1922, 1925 and 1944.<sup>128</sup> In 1932 the building was described as "the old sergeants' mess" but there is no other direct reference to this use.<sup>129</sup> A sergeants' mess was located in casemates 26 and 29 between 1906 and 1924. Thus if the building was ever a sergeants' mess it probably was only for the period 1926 to 1931. (See casemates 26-29).

The unemployment relief camp used the building as a recreation room.<sup>130</sup> (See Figure 5). Only \$71.00 was expended to prepare the building for this purpose. The men at the camp had access to magazines, newspapers, a gramophone, movies and possibly a piano in the recreation room. A small canteen sold tobacco, cigarettes and "small necessities" at reduced prices.

The building was credited with another use in the Sparks memo of 1936.<sup>131</sup> He referred to it as "a brick canteen or hospital". Sparks seems to have been misinformed; there is nothing to suggest that the building was a hospital when the Canadian army occupied the Citadel between 1906 and 1931, and the hospital for the unemployment relief camp was in the redan.

The Canteen was a mess during the 1940s. In March of 1944 it was

described as a recreation and mess building for 27 officers of the Canadian Women's Army Corps (C.W.A.C.), and quarters for two female officers and 32 other ranks of the C.W.A.C.<sup>132</sup> It contained officers' and sergeants' messes in 1945.<sup>133</sup> In January of 1946 it was an officers' mess for the R.C.E. No. 6.<sup>134</sup> The Department of National Defence planned to retain the Canteen when transfer of the Citadel to the Department of Mines and Resources was under discussion in 1947.<sup>135</sup>

In December 1948 the Department of National Defence entered a leave and license agreement with the Maritime Broadcasting Company.<sup>136</sup> Permission was granted for the company to install and operate a frequency modulation remote control transmitter in the basement of the Canteen. A mast was erected on the rampart of the northwest demi-bastion. The agreement was on a yearly basis, \$1.00 per annum, and could be cancelled with three months notice or, in the case of an emergency, with one month's notice. The agreement was still in effect when the Citadel became a national historic site in 1951.

When the Massey engineers examined the Citadel in 1950, there was an officers' mess for the Reserve Force RCE in the Canteen.<sup>137</sup> Since the building was in use, it was being maintained.

#### Structural Details

The Canteen was a brick building, approximately 68 ft. by 42 ft.<sup>138</sup> It was built on the walls of the north magazine which were taken down to the spring of the arch and used as a foundation for the Canteen. The height of the granite foundation was approximately 8 1/2 ft. The doorways in the end walls of the magazine continued to be used as entrances to the cellar of the Canteen.

The exterior openings of the ground floor remained the same throughout the Canadian period.<sup>139</sup> There were three doors - one on the east, west and north walls. The east door was a double door. There were six windows on the east wall, six windows on the west wall and four on the south wall. All but two of the window openings measured 6 ft. by 3 ft. 6 in. and had sash windows, four over four. The end windows in the two walls forming the southwest corner of the building were 4 ft. by 3 ft. 6 in. These windows

were smaller than the others because there was a platform under them.

The Canteen's design provided a porch at each of the three doors. Each porch had three windows. The north porch was different from the other two. It had an independent roof with a skylight, while the roofs of the other two were extensions of the slopes of the main roof. The stairs at the north end were outside. In addition to the stairs leading up to the north porch, there was also a short run of exterior stairs and a platform against the (west) wall.

The north porch was divided into three sections and had an earth closet in the back or west section in 1902, 1913, and 1921.<sup>140</sup> Between December of 1944 and July of 1945 the back section, approximately 8 ft., was removed.<sup>141</sup> In 1945 there was a coatroom in the west section of what remained of the north porch.

The floorplan of the Canteen was subject to relatively few alterations between 1906 and 1945. The ground floor was divided into seven rooms in 1902, 1908, and 1913.<sup>142</sup> A tap room, 39 ft. 7 in. by 21 ft., was located at the south end of the building and had a platform on the west wall. A corporal's room and two bedrooms were also situated along the west wall. A passage, 3 ft. 9 in. wide, ran between the bedrooms and a scullery and living room which were on the east wall. Also on the east wall was a bar with a counter, and serving hatches into the tap room and corporal's room. There was a fireplace in every room except the bar.

The use of the rooms changed by March of 1921. (See Figure 17). The tap room was a billiard room, the bar was a reading room, the living room was a dining room and two bedrooms were a barber's shop and NCO quarters. The scullery remained the same. The corporal's room became a library, and the north end of the room was divided into a vestibule and a bathroom with a toilet and bath. Partitions were also added to the reading room, extending the passage and also creating a vestibule at the east entrance.

In 1922 the NCO quarters was a caretaker's room and the billiard room was referred to as a recreation room.<sup>143</sup> No use was given for the reading room. The use of the other rooms remained the same.

There were plumbing changes by 1944.<sup>144</sup> A toilet and urinal were on the south wall of the washroom and a sink on the north wall. A sink had also been added on the other side of the north wall, in the adjoining room.

The 1944 plan supplies the plumbing, heating and electrical layout.

Major changes occurred in 1945 when the building served as both a sergeants' mess and an officers' mess.<sup>145</sup> The tap or recreation room became an anteroom and a fairly elaborate bar was built where the serving hatch had been. The former bar/reading room was divided into a vestibule, bar, toilet and sergeants' mess. A sink, soft drink cooler and shelves were installed in the bar. The scullery became a toilet and bar. The north end of the passage was removed, opening the former barber's shop and dining room into a long lounge. The partition between the NCO's quarters and passage was also removed and the area became the officers' mess. The bathroom and vestibule were taken out and the former corporal's room/library was converted to a kitchen with serving hatches in the north and south partitions into the anteroom and officers' mess.

The cellar consisted of three main areas.<sup>146</sup> There were four rooms in the area at the north end - two storerooms on the west wall and a coal room and furnace room on the east wall. The central area was a beer cellar in 1902 and 1908; it was designed with space for four casks in the center of the room and for seven casks on both the east and west walls. Steps ran from the beer cellar to a trap door in the bar above in 1902 but seem to have been removed when the bar became a reading room in 1921. The area at the south end of the cellar was a beer cellar in 1908.

The Canteen had a pitch roof with a granite coping on the north and south ends.<sup>147</sup> The record plan states that the roof was to be slate over one inch boarding. By 1950 the roof was shingled.

The original design included a small tower on the ridge, near the south end of the building. The record plans showed two windows with four panes overlooking the two slopes. A tower was built but was removed by 1942: the tower is indicated on a 1923 aerial but only a patch in the roofing is seen on a 1942 aerial.<sup>148</sup> (See Figure 6). The building seems to have been reroofed by 1950.<sup>149</sup>

### South Magazine

The south magazine was usually referred to as a magazine throughout the Canadian period although it was not always used as such. In 1907 it was

a fitted shell store.<sup>150</sup> In October 1914, there was a large quantity of ammunition stored in the building.<sup>151</sup>

The magazine was not used as an ammunition store during World War II. In 1940 it was a wet canteen.<sup>152</sup> In September of 1943 the Gun Operations Room was moved from the Police Block at Royal Artillery Park into the south magazine at the Citadel.<sup>153</sup> The Gun Operations Room served as the Battle Headquarters of the anti-aircraft defences and was manned by troops detailed from anti-aircraft batteries in the Halifax Fortress. Some of the staff were from the Canadian Women's Army Corps (CWAC). The magazine was still a gun operations room in March of 1944 and probably continued to serve this purpose until the end of the war.<sup>154</sup>

In January of 1946 the magazine held quartermaster stores for the R.C.E. No. 6.<sup>155</sup> The Department of National Defence included the magazine in the list of buildings which they would retain when they were anticipating transfer of the property in 1936 and 1947.<sup>156</sup>

The installations of the anti-aircraft operations room were still in place when the Massey engineers inspected the Citadel in 1950.<sup>157</sup> The army was using the building for storage in September of 1951.<sup>158</sup>

### Structural Details

There is little structural information on the south magazine between 1906 and 1943. A ventilation shaft was added in May of 1923.<sup>159</sup> Storage was provided for flags in September of 1923, and repairs were made to lightning conductors and to unspecified platforms. The lightning conductors ran along the ridges of the porches and the main body of the buildings.<sup>160</sup> Two wires also ran down the slopes of the main building, dividing the roof into thirds. (See Figure 18).

Major renovations were proposed when the magazine became a gun operations room in 1943.<sup>161</sup> Unfortunately the details on the plan are so faint that some of them are illegible. Partitions formed a telephone exchange in the northwest corner, a duty officer's room in the northeast corner, a gun operations room in the center of the building and a C.W.A.C. room at the south end. There were three platforms - one between the south ventilators and two between the north ventilators. The two north platforms, referred

to as the first dias and second dias, were at different levels and had a counter between them.

The proposed renovations in 1943 included the construction of two lavatories at the south end of the magazine, adjacent to the south porch.<sup>162</sup> An officers' lavatory, 7 ft. by 5 ft. 6 in. and a C.W.A.C. lavatory, 14 ft. by 6 ft. 6 in., were proposed. The officers' lavatory was to be situated on the east side of the porch, with a window in the south wall and a door in the party wall shared with the porch. A toilet and basin were to be installed in the officers' lavatory and two toilets and two basins in the other lavatory.

The estimate for restoration of the magazine in 1950 was \$3,600.<sup>163</sup> The roof and roofing needed to be replaced. Restoration of the interior would have involved removing temporary partitions, sheathing and a false ceiling.

#### Officers' Quarters

An H-shaped building was constructed on the parade in front of the Canteen at the beginning of World War II. (See Figure 8). It was officers' quarters, designed to accommodate 22 officers, although subsequent plans indicate that it was occupied by 27 officers.<sup>164</sup> In January of 1946 the Royal Canadian Engineers, No. 6, were occupying the building.<sup>165</sup> It was considered structurally unsound and an "eyesore to the Public" by October of 1947, when the General Officer Commanding, Eastern Command, recommended that the building be demolished and the materials be salvaged for reuse.<sup>166</sup> This recommendation seems to have been followed. The building was gone by 1950.

#### Structural Details

The Officers' Quarters was H-shaped. (See Figure 19). The north wing was 64 ft. by 20 ft. and contained two bedrooms for eight officers, a boiler room and a store-room. The south wing was 56 ft. 6 in. by 20 ft. and contained two rooms for two majors, a room for the adjutant and a room for the officer commanding. The link between the two wings was 24 ft. long and approximately 19 ft. wide and held the washroom and toilet facilities for the two wings. There were hallways in each of the three components of the building.

The building was one storey and had a pitch roof on each component. The exterior walls and the roof were finished with 2-ply roofing paper. The windows were sash windows. There were three exterior doors - one in the central hallway, one in the boiler room in the north wing and one in a hall in the south wing. The south wall of the building, which faced the end of the Cavalier, was considered to be the front of the Officers' Quarters.

#### Kitchen and Mess

In 1941, and possibly in 1940, a wooden building stood at the south end of the parade, between the gun shed and the south magazine.<sup>167</sup> (See Figure 8). Its purpose was to provide temporary mess space for 300 men occupying the Citadel during World War II. The east wing of the building was a Junior N.C.O.'s mess and the west wing was a gunners' mess. Later references described the building simply as an O.R. (Other Ranks) mess.

Renovations were authorized in January of 1944 to correct some of the inconveniences resulting from the temporary nature of the building.<sup>168</sup> The structure was originally intended for summer use only and was difficult to heat. There were no ceilings, and dirt fell from the rafters into the men's food. The kitchen was poorly lit. Wear and tear were apparent on the floors and walls.

In March of 1944 one wing of the building was used as a recreation room while the other continued to serve as a dining room.<sup>169</sup> In March 1945 there was a recommendation to turn over the Mess and the Brick Block to No. 6 Engineer Services and Works Company, R.C.E.<sup>170</sup> The 200 ORs in the company were to be fed in the Mess. In January of 1946 the R.C.E. No. 6 were using the building for ORs' mess and recreation.<sup>171</sup>

The building was vacant by January of 1947.<sup>172</sup> Since no further use was anticipated for the building and it was deteriorating rapidly, a recommendation was made to dismantle the structure and to salvage its building materials. The building was gone by 1950.<sup>173</sup>

#### Structural Details

The Kitchen and Mess was 74 ft. by 78 ft.<sup>174</sup> The design of the building



was unusual. There were four different roof levels and three different floor levels. An analysis of the structural details is difficult because the only plan available for the building is almost illegible.

The building seems to have been constructed as an H-shaped building. The foundation plan is for two wings, 24 ft. by 78 ft., and a center section, 26 ft. by 48 ft. A H-shaped building with messes in both wings is shown on the circa 1940 plan.<sup>175</sup> Windows were located in the center section of the building in 1943,<sup>176</sup> suggesting that the section had originally had exterior walls.

If the building was constructed in an "H" shape, the space between the two wings had become part of the building by 1942. (See Figure 6). The south section between the wings contained the dishwashing room and refrigerator in 1943, when a proposal was made to install two skylights. The roof of the south center section ran from the top of the kitchen wall, thus making the south windows of the kitchen useless without the addition of skylights.

There were four different roof levels on the Kitchen and Mess. There were pitch roofs on the east and west wings and a hip roof on the center wing. The ridge of the center wing was 23 ft. above foundation level while the ridges of the east and west wings were about 17 ft. above foundation level. The sections between the two wings both had a single slope, the south one beginning 17 ft. above foundation level and the north one at 11 1/2 ft.

The first 11 ft. of the floor in both center sections flanking the kitchen were on the same level as the kitchen. The remainder of the south section was at a higher level while the remainder of the north section was on a lower level.

The 1943 plan seems to show seven exterior doors - five actual and two proposed. Three are on the north wall, one on the east and west walls and two on the south wall. The plan shows one window detail, which probably was representative. It was a sash window, six over six.

The 1943 renovations included replacing the floors in the mess halls, making general repairs, and constructing two skylights. Insul-board was to be used to make a ceiling and to sheath the walls up to a height of 6 ft.



### Latrine

There was a latrine between the temporary Kitchen and Mess and the blast wall of the south magazine during World War II. (See Figure 8). It was structurally unsound and "a definite eyesore to the Public" by October of 1947 when the General Officer Commanding recommended its demolition.<sup>177</sup>

### Junior NCO's Recreation Building

One of the temporary buildings constructed during World War II stood beside the gun shed at the north end of the parade. (See Figures 6 and 8). The west end of the building was aligned with the west end of the gun shed. The building was shorter and wider than the gun shed which measured 70 ft. by 22 ft.

Almost nothing is known about the building. The general plan of the Citadel circa 1940 labels it as a recreation building for Junior N.C.O. and it appears on aerial photographs in 1941 and 1942.<sup>178</sup> No further information has been found. The list of buildings at the Citadel in 1946 does not mention the structures and it is not included in the 1947 plans and documents which arranged the demolition of the temporary World War II buildings.

### Bicentenary Theatre

A "Theatre Under the Stars" operated at the Citadel during the summer of 1949, as part of Halifax's bicentennial celebrations.<sup>179</sup> The Canadian Legion erected an enclosed stage on the parade, in the corner of the redan, in June of 1949. A commemorative operetta, "Halifax 1749", written by Will R. Bird with music by Walter Kaufman, premiered July 4. The operetta was presented twice a week until mid-September. There were also performances by the Halifax Conservatory Choral Union, the Mass Negro Choir, St. John's Minstrels and the Atlantic Players group of the Drama Festival. The Miss Atlantic pageant and the world premier of a play, Louis Riel, were held at the Citadel during the summer.

The stage was of prefabricated construction and had been used the previous year for the Miss Canada pageant in Hamilton, Ontario.<sup>180</sup> It was a framed, dome building, covered with what seems to be tarpaper. There was an

extension on the north side and a ledge on the south and east sides. The wide opening for the stage was on the west side, facing the parade.<sup>181</sup>

(See Figure 20).

The stage was still standing in 1951. In July, Mr. C. G. Childe, Superintendent of Historic Parks and Sites, reported that the Mayor had agreed to remove the building at the expense of the City.<sup>182</sup>

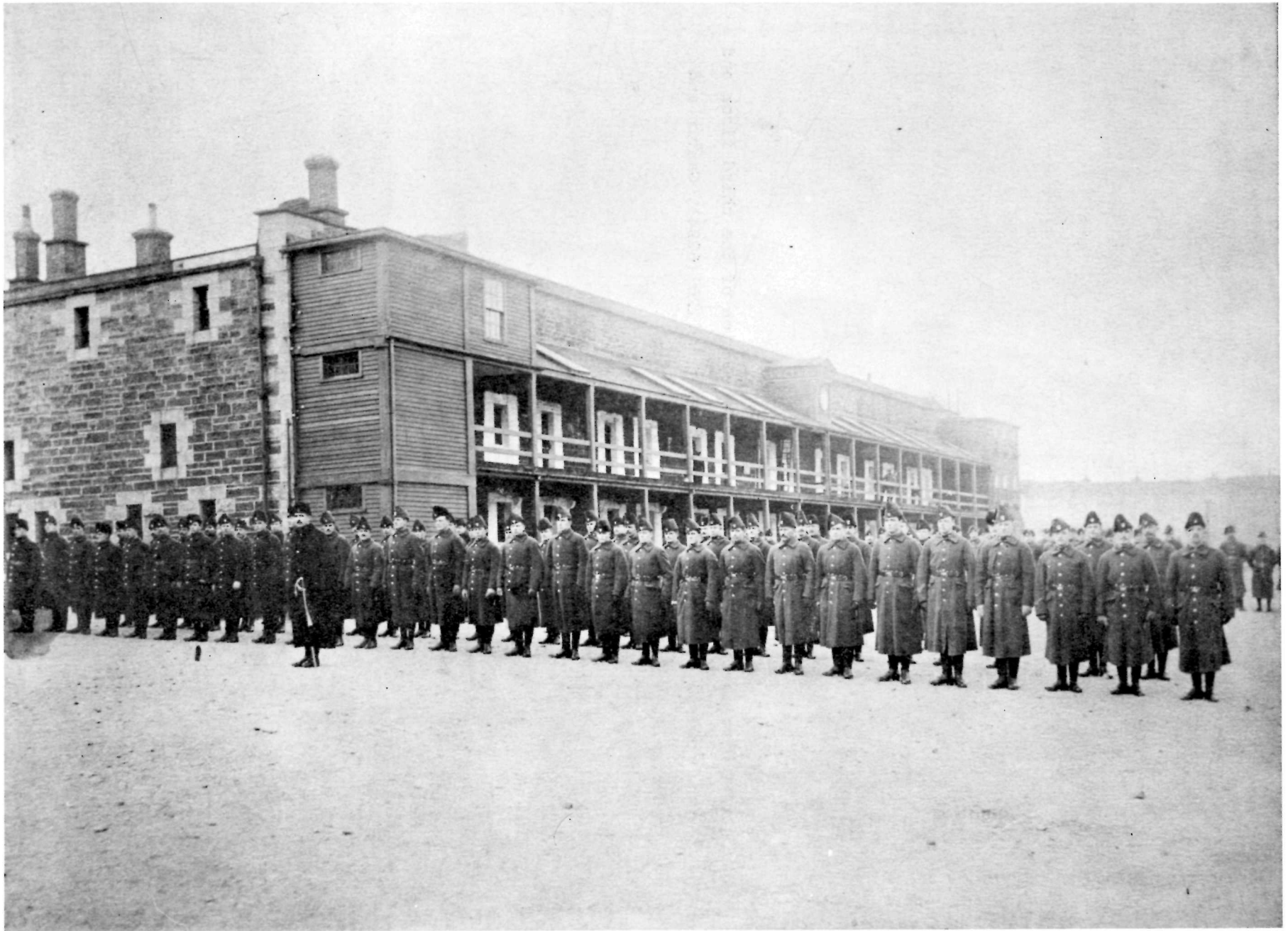
#### Hose House

There was a small hose house on the parade during World War II.<sup>183</sup> It was located in front of the redan, near the corner shared with the southeast salient. (See Figure 8).

10 Photo of parade taken from the northeast salient, July 1928. In addition to raising the roof of the Cavalier, the Canadians had also re~~v~~atted the structure at the south end of the verandah and whitewashed or painted the east wall. The new building at the foot of the storm mast and the renovated front~~w~~all of casemate 31 are also seen ~~o~~n the photograph. (Nova Scotia Museum. P 170 28.121 (6295))



- 11      Review of troops in front of the Cavalier, circa 1918. (Nova Scotia  
Museum, P 170 - 32.)



- 12      The Cavalier in 1928, after the construction of the third floor and the new roof. (Nova Scotia Museum, P 170 28.120 (6294), Gauvin and Gentzell, 4 July 1928.)



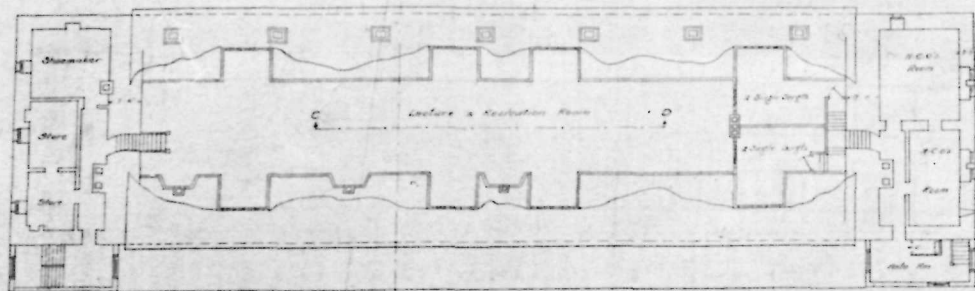


13      The Cavalier in 1950. The pitch roof and verandah had been removed.  
          (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 2, HS - 12486)

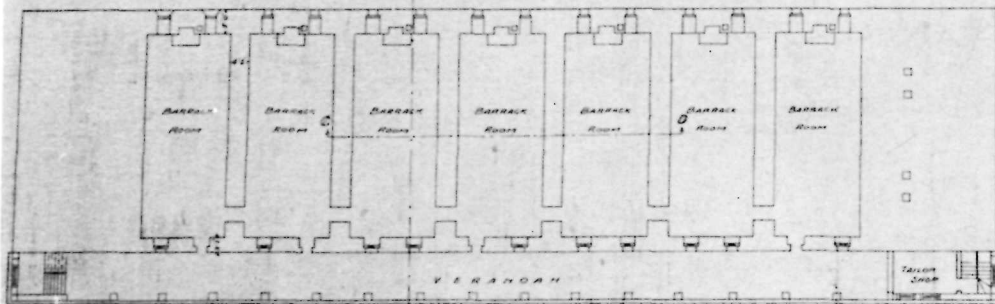


Photo (N) P. O. A. O.

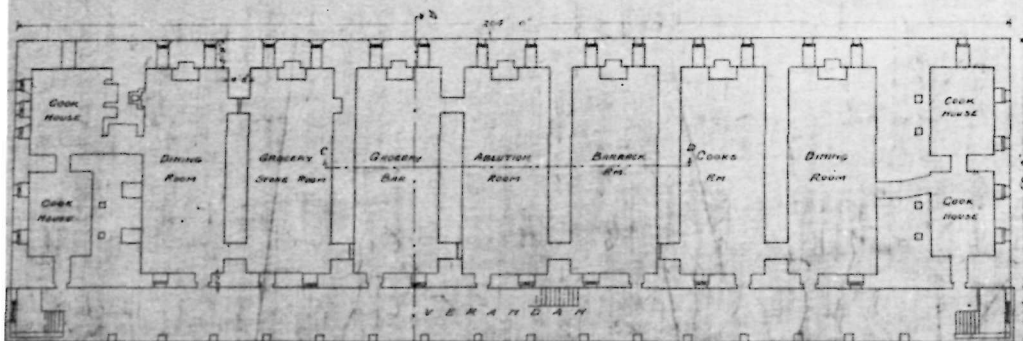
- 14 . Floorplans and sections of the Cavalier, showing new upper storey and roof, 25 June 1925. The north end of the verandah is incorrect on both the Ground Floor Plan and Section A-B. (Department of National Defence.)



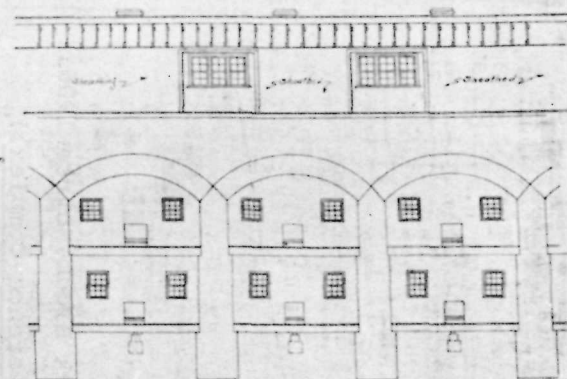
Second Floor Plan



First Floor Plan

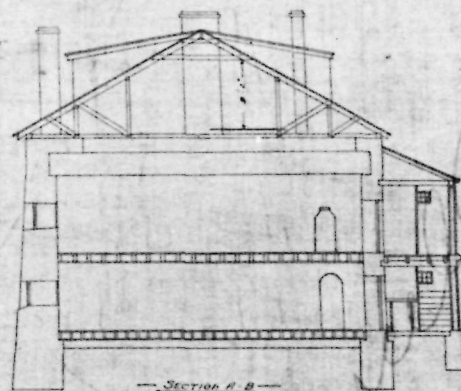


Ground Floor Plan



Section C-D

NOTE:  
SCALE FOR  
Plans - 1/8" = 1'  
Sections - 1/4" = 1'



Section A-B

CITADEL  
CAVALIER BARRACKS

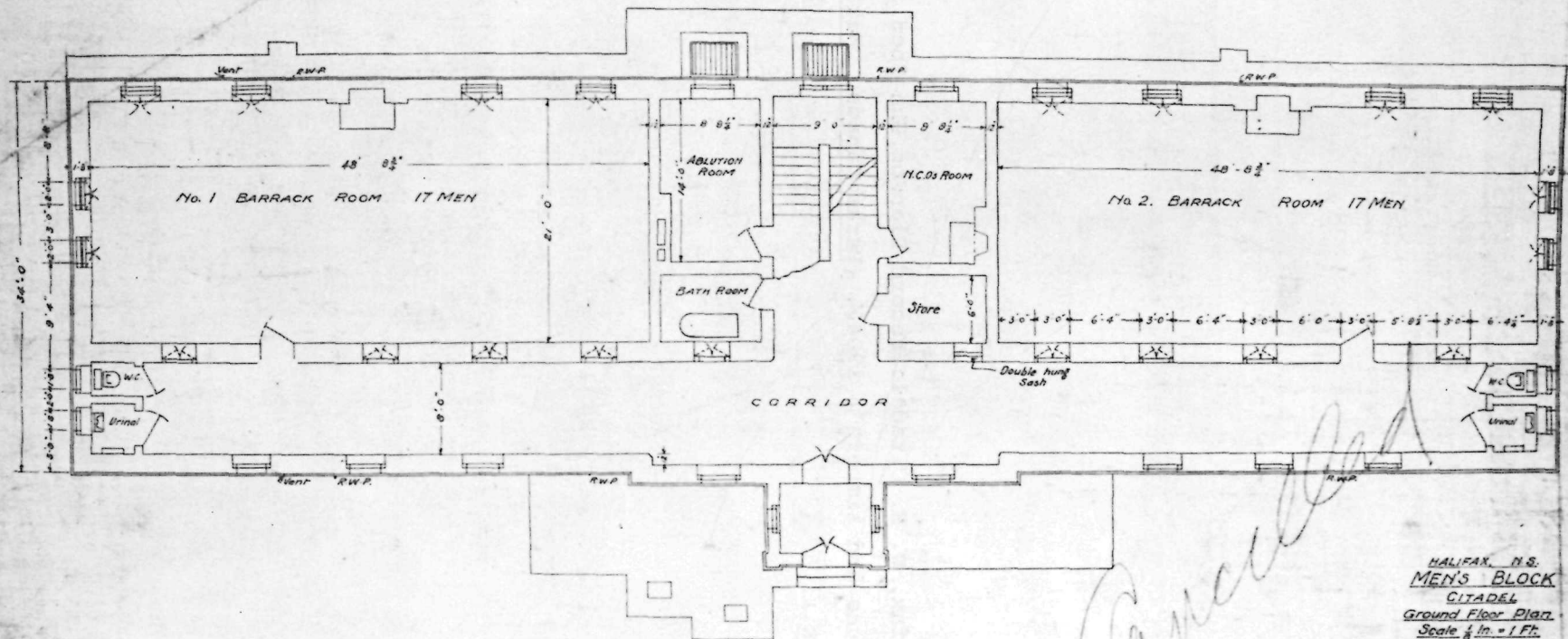
DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENSE  
M. O. 1196  
OFFICE OF DESIGN  
HALIFAX, N.S.

Scales as shown  
Date 52.6.10

PLAN IDENTIFICATION No.		
10	57	29

*M. Smith*

- 15      Ground floor plan of Brick Block, circa 1905.  
          (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)



— GROUND FLOOR —

*Cancelled*

HALIFAX, N.S.  
**MEN'S BLOCK**  
 CITADEL  
 Ground Floor Plan  
 Scale 1/4" = 1 FT.

PLAN IDENTIFICATION No.			
OFF. IDENT. NO.	CBA OFF. ID. NO.	SEQUENCE	REVISION
10	51	95	

48-35-12-14

16 Part of: "Halifax, N. S. Citadel..Record Plan of Gun Shed for 6  
15 Pr. B. L. guns and limbers", 1904. (Parks Canada. Halifax  
Defence Complex.)



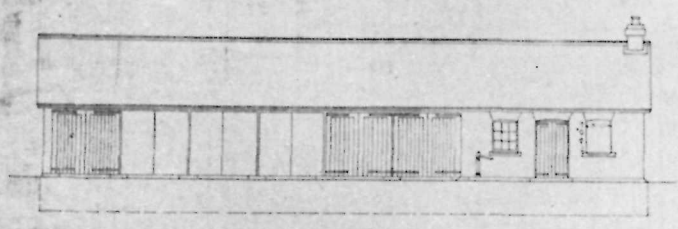
HALIFAX N.S. CITADEL

RECORD PLAN OF GUN SHED FOR 6 15 PR. B.L. GUNS AND LIMBERS

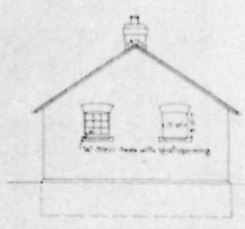
SCALE FOR FLOOR PLAN AND SECTION A-B 4 FEET TO 1 INCH (R.F. = 48)

SCALE FOR ELEVATIONS 8 FEET TO 1 INCH (R.F. = 96)

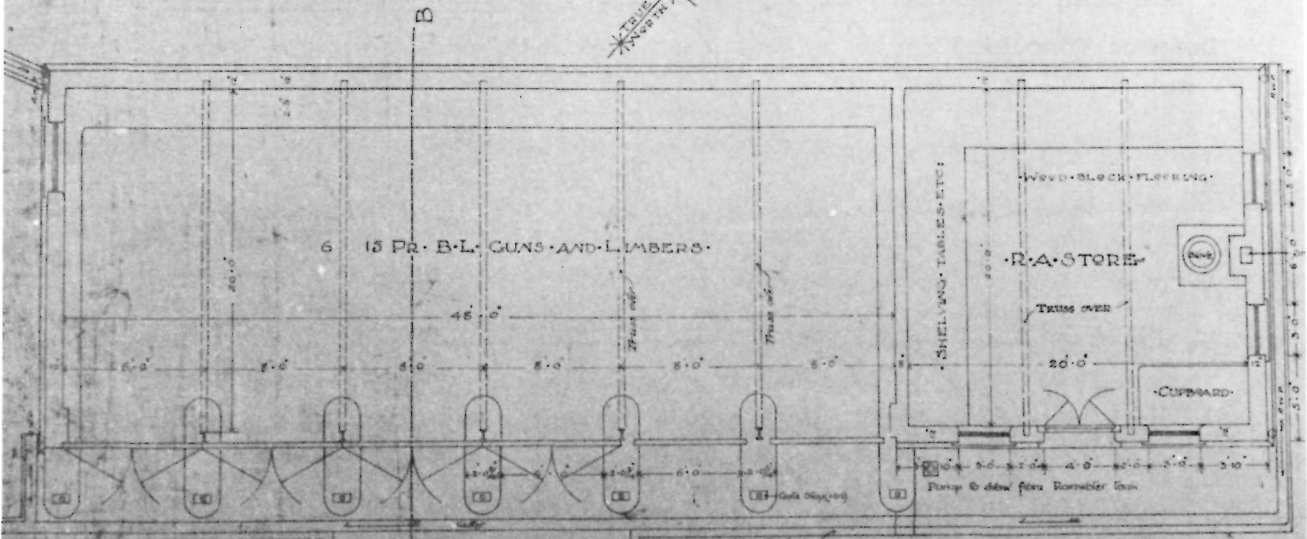
MILL  
 ITEM  
 AUTH  
 DATE  
 DATE  
 ESTD  
 ACTD  
 MATD



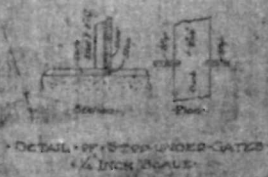
FRONT ELEVATION



END ELEVATION



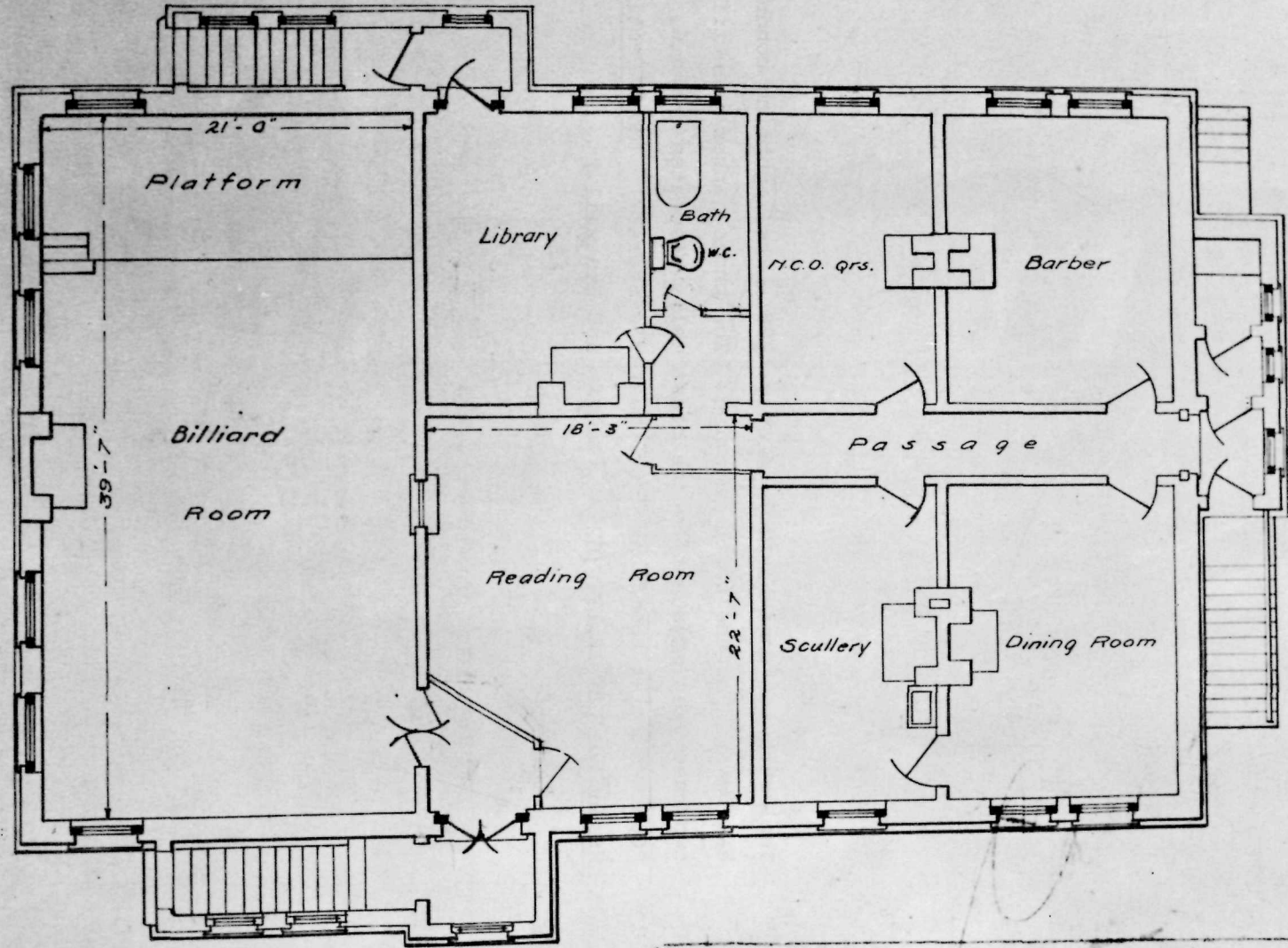
FLOOR PLAN





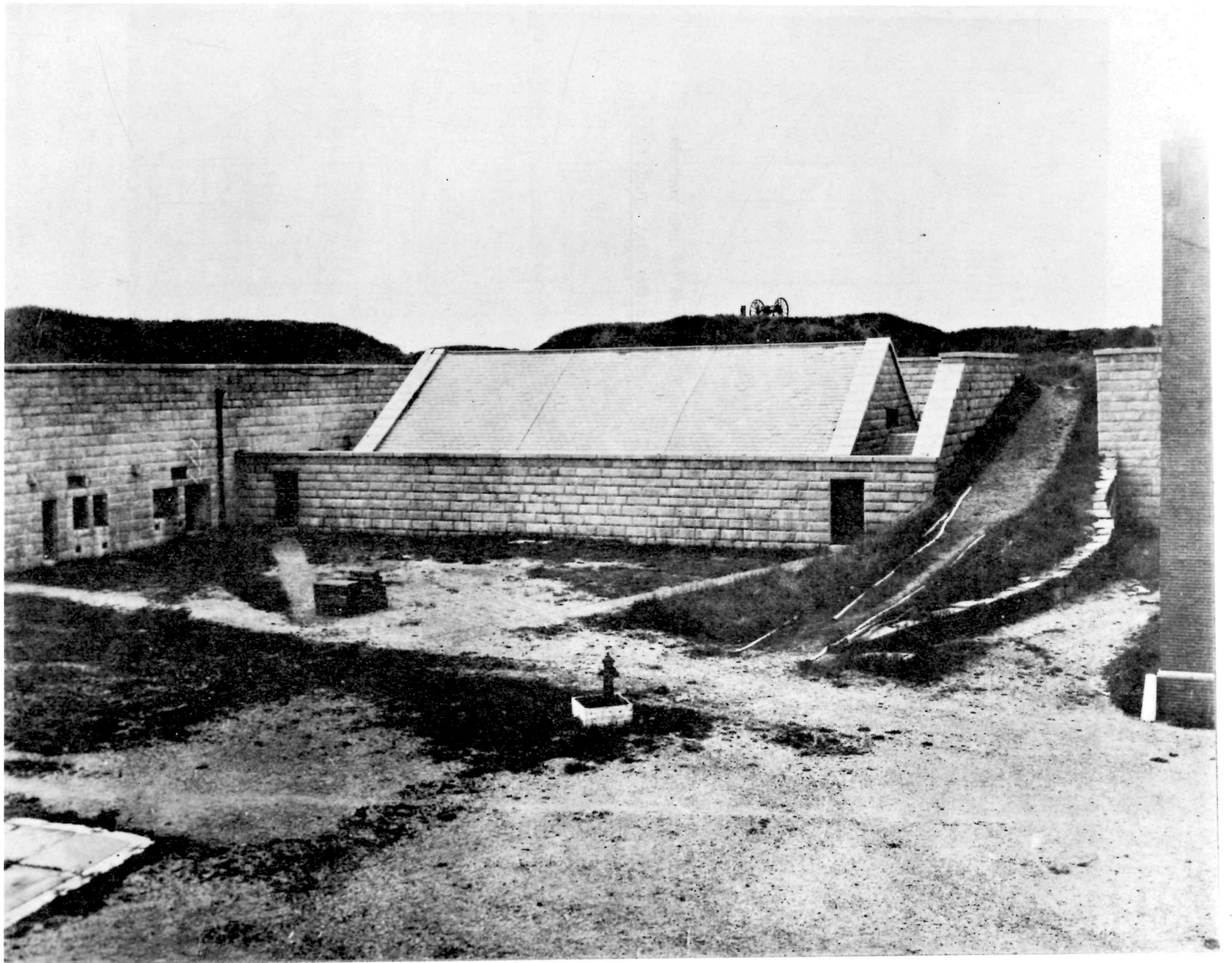
- 17 "Halifax, N. S. - Citadel (Canteen Building) Recreation Room"  
Floor plan of Canteen, 22 September 1921. (Parks Canada. Halifax  
Defence Complex.)

HALIFAX N.S.  
**CITADEL**  
 (CANTEEN BLDG.)  
**RECREATION ROOM**  
 Scale 8 ft. = 1 Inch

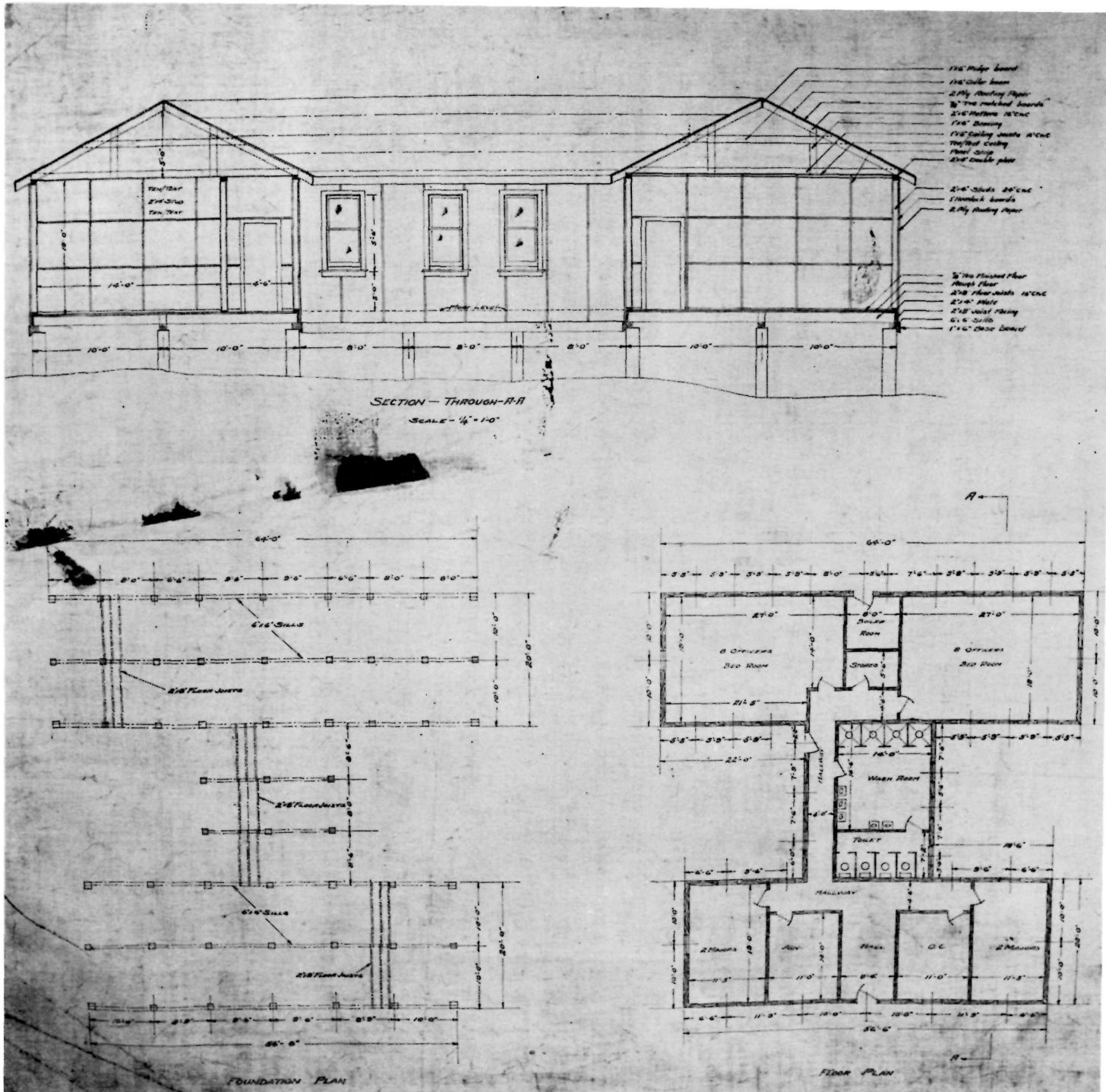


PLAN IDENTIFICATION No.			
OFF. IDENT. NO.	OBJ. OFF. ID. NO.	SEQUENCE	REVISION
104	51	25	

- 18 The southwest demi-bastion, 4 July 1928. The lightning conductors can be seen on the south magazine. The photographer identified the two casemates adjacent to the blast wall, casemates 5 and 6, as "Court Martial Room" and " Qr. Master's Stores". (Nova Scotia Museum, P 170 28.124 (6298), Gauvin and Gentzell.)

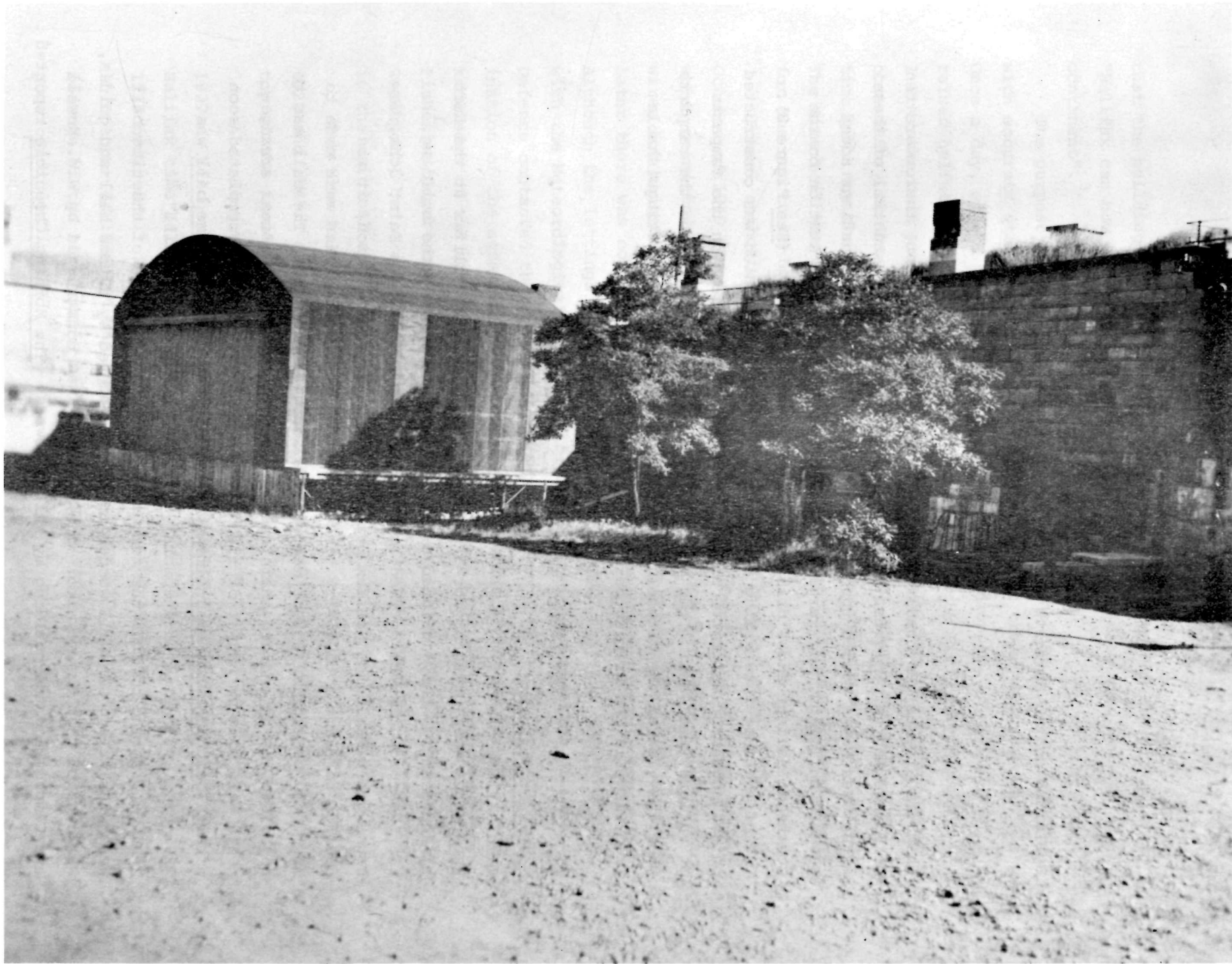


19 Part of plan of Officers' Quarters at the north end of the parade,  
in front of the Canteen, 11 January 1940. (Parks Canada. Halifax  
Defence Complex.)



- 20 A theatre was erected in the corner of the redan for special performances during Halifax's bicentennial celebrations. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 3, 1950, HS - 12487)







## Buildings on the Ramparts

When the Citadel was transferred to the Canadian government, there were ten buildings on the ramparts. (See Figure 7). The most substantial of these structures was a wooden upper storey on the redan. The Canadians added several buildings, the largest of which were a new signal station on the southeast salient and a drill shed on the south ravelin. (See Figure 8). One of the most interesting buildings was a time ball which was constructed on the southeast salient. Sixteen buildings were located on the ramparts at various times during the Canadian period. The buildings on the ramparts made the view of the Citadel from the clock tower easily distinguishable from views in the British period. (See Figure 21).

### Southeast Salient

#### Time Ball

When plans were drawn up for a new Customs building in Halifax at the turn of the century, they included a time ball on the dome of the building.<sup>1</sup> The idea probably was derived from the Customs building in Saint John, New Brunswick. While the Halifax building was under construction, it was decided to erect a temporary time ball at the Citadel. Plans were made to mount the ball on a 30 foot mast on the southeast salient. The ball was to be hoisted by an endless chain and released electrically. Final arrangements were made in August of 1904 and the mast was probably completed soon after. Belcher's Farmers' Almanac for 1905 stated that a time ball was "temporarily located on a special staff on top of Citadel Hill".<sup>2</sup>

In the spring of 1908 the temporary mast and apparatus of the time ball were dismantled. A small wooden tower, surmounted by a time ball and guides, was erected on the same site. The time ball was constructed by W.W. Howell and Company and the building by Walter Lownds. The Morning Chronicle reported

that the building would go into operation on 1 August 1908 and stated that "Halifax can now boast of the most modern and up-to-date time ball on the continent".<sup>3</sup>

The purpose of the time ball was to provide the ships in the harbour with accurate standard time so that they could set their chronometers. Once a day, except on Sundays, the time ball was dropped. The ball was raised halfway at 12:45 P.M. and to the top at 12:59 P.M. At precisely 1 P.M. the ball was dropped, activated electrically from the meteorological observatory at the Customs building in Saint John. Simultaneously, the time gun, now the "one o'clock gun" instead of the "noon gun", was fired. The time ball was more accurate than the gun because it took several seconds for the gun to be heard at a distance.<sup>4</sup>

Formal authorization for the time ball was received only in 1910. In October of 1910 the Department of Militia and Defence entered an agreement which permitted a "Building for a Time Ball and Mast to place the necessary wires for maintaining same" at the Citadel, at a cost of 25 cents per annum. Later there was confusion over who was the other partner in the agreement. Although the lettings between 1924 and 1935 stated that the agreement was with the Meteorological Department of Canada, the Department of National Defence contacted the Department of Transport to notify it of the termination of the agreement in 1947. The Department of Transport denied any knowledge of the agreement. The meteorological branch of the Marine and Fisheries Department, part of which eventually joined the Department of Transport, had erected the structure and would have been the other partner in the original agreement.<sup>5</sup>

The time ball building was referred to as a meteorological station in 1920 and 1947. Meteorological instruments seem to have been located at the top of the frame surrounding the time ball.<sup>6</sup>

According to Army Headquarters, Ottawa, the time ball operated until 1937.<sup>7</sup> Belcher's Farmers' Almanac for the Maritime Provinces listed a Halifax time ball in its almanacs between 1905 and 1925;<sup>8</sup> a new format in 1925 omitted all information on time balls. The agreement was terminated in October of 1946 but the building was allowed to remain on the site because of the structure's historical significance. The building was in poor condition in 1947.<sup>9</sup>

The report to the Massey Commission in 1950 recognized the historical interest of the "Ball Tower" as a navigational aid, and encouraged restoration. Reconstruction rather than restoration was what they intended, however, for the estimate included \$200.00 for demolition of the building and \$1500 for rebuilding.<sup>10</sup> Another \$300.00 was estimated for repairing the time ball mechanism.

The long-range plans for the new national historic site included restoration of the time ball tower. The work was finished in July of 1956.<sup>11</sup> Within ten years the restored tower had been removed from the ramparts.<sup>12</sup>

### *Structural Details*

The time ball house was a two-storey structure, approximately ten ft. square at the base. The ground floor had a central door and two windows on the west wall. There were two steps at the door. A small overhanging roof was located between the ground floor and the first storey. There were two arched windows in each of the four walls of the first storey. The time ball apparatus sat on the main roof of the building.<sup>13</sup> (See Figures 22 and 27).

The time ball was made of copper and painted black with a gold band. It was approximately two feet in diameter. Four guides held the ball in place and a ladder on the west side of the apparatus provided access to it. The ball was activated electrically. There is no information available on the mechanism at this time.<sup>14</sup>

When first constructed, the time ball building was an attractive structure. It was painted a dark colour with light trim. An intricate iron railing ran around the top of the roof. The frame of the ball was topped with what seem to have been three small meteorological instruments.<sup>15</sup>

### Director of Signals Quarters

A Director of Signals Quarters and a signal station stood on the south rampart of the southeast salient when the Citadel was transferred to the Canadian government in 1906. (See Figure 7). The assessed value of the Director's Quarters around the time of transfer was £50.<sup>16</sup> The building remained a few years after the British signal station was replaced by a

larger building; it was removed some time between January of 1922 and September of 1923.<sup>17</sup>

The Director of Signals Quarters appears on a 1914 record plan, incorrectly titled "Signaling Station".<sup>18</sup> It was a wooden building which was 48 ft. long, 15 ft. wide at the west end and 20 ft. wide at the east end. The northeast corner was angled rather than square, and was the location of the only fireplace. There was another chimney, however, which provided a flue for a stove.

There was an extension, 6 ft., (n-s) by 7 ft., on the south wall. Access was through a door in the extension's west wall and through a door into the main building. There was a window in the east wall. The flat roof of the extension was finished with zinc.

The main building had three roof lines and two different types of roofing. The east end of the building was a combination hip-pitch roof with a west gable end and hips at the northeast and southeast corners. This section of roof seems to have been shingled. The west end of the building was at two levels; there was a low pitch roof, 12 ft. long, and a flat roof, 5 ft. long. Both sections at the west end had a tar and gravel roof.

There were six rooms in the main building in 1908 and 1914 and seven rooms in 1922.<sup>19</sup> In 1914 at least two and possibly three of the rooms were plastered, one was finished with vertical boards and two were finished with horizontal boards.

There were five windows in the south wall, a door in the east wall and three windows and a door in the north wall. In 1914 one window was situated in the west wall but a door and second window had been added by 1922. There were three varieties of sash windows - one of six over six with 10 3/4 in. by 10 in. panes, another of six over six with 9 1/2 in. by 10 in. panes and one of two over two with 14 in. by 21 in. panes.

#### Signal Station (British)

The assessed value of the British signal station around the time of transfer of the Citadel was only £35.<sup>20</sup> A decade after the transfer, plans were produced to replace the British building. The Canadian signal station was

built some time between 1916 and 1920. [See Signal Station (Canadian)]. Part of the south wing of the new building stood on the site of the former British signal station.

The plans of the Canadian period contribute little to the structural information on the former British signal station; two 1908 plans provide the only structural details.<sup>21</sup> It was a wooden structure, approximately 37 ft. by 15 ft. The building was divided into three rooms; a S.O.S. room was located in the west end of the building and a telephone exchange in the center room. The use of the room in the east end is not given. There was no interior connection between the S.O.S. room and the rest of the building. It seems that there were three windows on the south wall, one window on the east wall and four windows and three doors on the north wall. What seems to be either a verandah or an enclosed porch was located on the north wall, overlooking the parade. This feature was approximately 22 ft. by 4 ft. and had entrances in the center and at both ends.

#### Signal Station (Canadian)

A new signal station was built on the ramparts, at the angle of the south-east salient, sometime between 1916 and 1920.<sup>22</sup> It was operated by the Royal Canadian Engineers until 1924 when it came under civilian control with direction supplied by the Port of Halifax Committee.<sup>23</sup> It seems that the Radio Branch of the Department of Marine, which later became the Department of Transport, took over the station on 1 April 1927.<sup>24</sup> The Radio Branch recorded ship movements and kept records on weather conditions for the meteorological service.

The signals for the Citadel masts were detailed in the yearly publications of Belcher's Farmers' Almanac.<sup>25</sup> Visual signals at the Citadel were abandoned temporarily during World War I and permanently in 1938.<sup>26</sup> The telephone, telegraph and wireless had gradually taken the place of flags. The storm warning service continued at the Citadel until 1945. In the war years, 1940 to 1945, it was operated by the navy.

There were rumours in the 1930s that the signal station was going to be vacated. A newspaper article in March of 1934 revealed that a proposal was under consideration to move the signal establishment into the new Federal

Building.<sup>27</sup> In his memo in November of 1936, N. A. Sparks, National Parks Engineer, was under the impression that the transfer to the new public building was imminent.<sup>28</sup> In January of 1937 the Halifax Mail reported that:

With the opening of the new Dominion Public building, the famous old marine tower on Citadel Hill will go out of existence as far as shipping activities at the Port of Halifax is concerned. The staff and equipment of the tower, more popularly known as the "Signal Station" will be quartered in the Dominion Public building.<sup>29</sup>

It seems that no move took place until January of 1945, however, when the storm mast was placed on the Federal Building.<sup>30</sup>

During World War II the signal station served as a mess. In 1940 it was a staff N.C.O.s' mess.<sup>31</sup> In March of 1944 the building was described as a sergeants' mess and kitchen, used by Atlantic Command Signals.<sup>32</sup> In January of 1946 it was being used by the Royal Canadian Corps of Signals.<sup>33</sup> It continued to be labelled "Sergeants' Mess and Kitchen" on a 1947 plan,<sup>34</sup> with the mess in the south wing and the kitchen in the east wing. Equipment for the time ball and mast was stored in one end, presumably the north end of the building. In 1947 and 1951 the active Army still had a requirement for the Signal Station.<sup>35</sup> In 1951, it was anticipated that the station would no longer be required after the Hammond Plains receiver was completed.

The report of the Massey engineers in 1950 stated that there were plans to demolish the signal station after it had been vacated.<sup>36</sup> The destruction of the station was the first major work carried out in the new national historic site. The building had been reduced to ruins by 2 October 1951.<sup>37</sup>

After the destruction of the building, a hundred-year-old statute pertaining to the signal station remained on the Nova Scotia statute books. The Statute of 1859 placed a tax of five shillings on all steamers and vessels entering the port of Halifax, to be paid to the Collector of Colonial Duties and to be used for the upkeep of the signal station. The Canadian Senate agreed to revoke the statute in 1960.<sup>38</sup>

### *Structural Details*

The signal station was a V-shaped, one-storey, wooden building which was situated on the rampart of the southeast salient. (See Figures 21, 22 and 25). It was finished with wood shingles and had a shingled hip roof. A verandah ran along the inside of the "V", overlooking the parade, and along the north end of the east wing. A tower was situated at the junction of the two wings. As proposed, the east wing was to be 81 ft. long, on the east wall, and 17 ft. wide, and the south wing was to be 72 ft. long, on the south wall, and 20 ft. wide. (See Figure 23).

A detailed floorplan was proposed in 1916. The proposal for the south wing included a switch room (15 ft. by 19 ft.), a test room (12 ft. by 19 ft.), a mechanists and clerk office (15 ft. by 19 ft.), and an office for the officer-in-charge of army signals. (15 ft. by 19 ft.). The proposed east wing included a "lecture room and sleeping in room for men on night relief" (19 ft. 6 in. on the east wall by 16 ft.), a store room (15 ft. by 16 ft.), and an instrument repair shop and workshop (20 ft. 6 in. along the east wall by 16 ft.) with a latrine (8 ft. by 11 ft. 6 in.) in the north-west corner. A flag room (15 ft. on the south wall by 26 ft. on the east wall) was situated in the corner. A hall, 4 ft. wide, led from the verandah to the flagroom.<sup>39</sup>

The floorplan of the completed building followed the proposal quite closely.<sup>40</sup> The only changes were in the east wing; the instrument repair room and store room exchanged places and the latrine was enlarged to the full width of the east wing. A proposed officers' washroom in an addition at the west end of the south wing was not constructed. Partitions were added to the switch and test rooms. The rooms opened onto the verandah, with the exception of the flag and lecture rooms which had their entrances from the hall. The only two interior connections were between the flag and switch rooms, and between the offices of the officer-in-charge and the mechanists and clerks. The latrine is shown as two rooms with a door in the north wall on a 1922 plan, although these details are not repeated on a 1924 plan.

The windows on the ditch side of the building were not spaced as proposed.<sup>41</sup> The rooms in the south wing had two windows on the south wall of each room, grouped in pairs. On the east wall there were three windows in

the flag room, two windows in each of the next three rooms and one window in the latrine. The windows were sash windows, 2 over 2. The proposed windows measured 3 ft. by 5 ft., with the exception of the four windows in the corner flag room, which measured 4 ft. by 3 ft. 6 in.

The openings of the parade side of the building are not clear in the photographs taken during the Canadian period. The plans<sup>42</sup> indicate that most of the openings followed the 1916 proposal, although the spacing may have changed slightly, as it had on the ditch side of the building. There seems to have been four doors and six windows on the north wall of the south wing and four doors and five windows on the west wall of the east wing. There were two windows and possibly a door in the north end of the east wing. A window was proposed for the west end of the south wing but does not seem to have been built.

The tower was built according to the proposal.<sup>43</sup> It was an octagonal structure with a diameter of 8 ft. and sides 3 ft. wide. Seven sides had a window, 27 in. by 12 in., hinged at the top. A double door on the eighth side opened onto a balcony which ran around the tower. The balcony was two ft. wide and had a railing made of 8 in. pipe. The roof was a shingled hip with a finial at the peak. The tower of the signal station was removed some time between 1933 and 1941.<sup>44</sup>

The verandah ran along the north wall of the south wing, and the west wall and north (end) wall of the east wing.<sup>45</sup> It had an independent roof which was just below the eaves of the roof of the main building. The section of verandah at the north end of the building was open in 1928 but was enclosed in 1936 and 1950. The rest of the verandah had vertical posts, a handrail and closely-spaced balusters.

No provision for heating was made in the 1916 proposal. When the building was constructed, however, three chimneys were added to the ridge on both the south and east wings.<sup>46</sup> By 1950 only one chimney remained on the ridge of the south wing, although another chimney had been added above the south wall. Two of the chimneys on the east wing had been replaced by square brick chimneys.<sup>47</sup>



#### Instrument Repair Shop/Side Arm Store

An instrument repair shop on the east rampart of the southeast salient was turned over to the Canadians by the British. (See Figure 7). The building had the same name in 1907 but had become a side-arm store by April of 1908.<sup>48</sup> When the new signal station was constructed, sometime between 1916 and 1920, the side-arm store was removed.<sup>49</sup>

The building was a wooden structure which measured approximately 20 ft. (n-s) by 10 ft. (e-w).<sup>50</sup> In 1908 there were two windows on the east wall and a wide door on the south wall.

#### Position Finder Cell

A position finder cell on the east rampart of the southeast salient was handed over to the Canadian army in 1906. (See Figure 7). The structure is shown on plans to 1924<sup>51</sup> and continued to be labelled a "P.F. building" until 1916, when it was described as both a "P.F. Shelter" and a "store". It was referred to simply as a store in 1920. By 1922 it had been converted to a Depression Range Finder, which previously had been located on the south rampart of the salient.

The building was wooden, approximately 10 feet square, and had a porch and two or three steps on the back (west) section of the south wall. There was a window on both the south and east walls. An elevation on a 1920 plan shows a hip roof and a wall seven and a half feet high from foundation to top of wall.<sup>52</sup>

#### Depression Range Finder Pit

At the beginning of the Canadian period there was a depression range finder pit on the south rampart of the southeast salient, located between the parapet and the flag staff, near the Director of Signals Quarters. (See Figure 7). The D.R.F. pit appears on plans in 1907 and 1908.<sup>53</sup> By 1922 it had been relocated to a building on the east rampart of the salient and the signal gun stood on the former site of the D.R.F. pit.<sup>54</sup>

The first D.R.F. pit was approximately 8 feet square. Access to the structure was through a door in the north wall.

#### Unidentified Building I

A small building appears on the south rampart of the southeast salient in several photographs between 1928 and 1950.<sup>55</sup> It does not appear on any plan. It was a square building and had a pitch roof with north and south slopes. It was located at the foot of the storm signal mast on the south rampart of the salient. (See Figures 10 and 24).

The building seems to have been used in connection with the storm signal mast. There is a faint outline of a building labelled "sunshine recorder, rain gage [sic]" on a circa 1925 plan. In correspondence about the time ball in 1947, the Department of Transport, formerly the Department of the Marine, stated that it had never requested permission for a time ball and mast but had requested permission for a mast and "shed for winter storage of equipment".<sup>56</sup> However, the Department of Transport later claimed that it had erected only a mast and had stored equipment in one end of the signal station.<sup>57</sup>

#### Unidentified Building II

A building was constructed on the south rampart of the southeast salient, over demi-casemates 7 and 8, sometime between 1942 and 1950.<sup>58</sup> It was a wooden structure with a low sloped roof. (See Figure 24).

#### South Ravelin

##### Side-Arm Store

One of the two side-arm stores transferred to the Canadians was situated on the south ravelin. (See Figure 7). How long the building survived is not known. It was still on the ravelin in 1908.<sup>59</sup> It is not shown on a 1910 plan but reappears on two 1916 plans;<sup>60</sup> all three plans are unreliable for the south ravelin, however, because they omit the drill shed.

The side-arm store was a wooden building with approximate dimensions of 20 ft. by 10 ft.<sup>61</sup> In 1908 there were two windows on the south wall and a wide door on the east wall.

##### Position Finder Instrument Store

The Position Finder Instrument Room was built on the south ravelin by the

British. (See Figure 7). It was a wooden building, approximately 27 ft. by 15 ft. with an east wing, 10 ft. by 6 ft.<sup>62</sup> The construction of the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery drill shed in 1908 displaced the building.

#### Drill Shed

A Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery Drill Shed was built on the south ravelin between 1907 and April of 1908.<sup>63</sup> In 1912, a 4.7 gun, surrounded by a semi-circular platform was used for gun drill and probably was mounted in the shed.<sup>64</sup> The building was still referred to as a R.C.G.A. drill shed in 1925.<sup>65</sup>

The drill shed continued to be used for training purposes after the withdrawal of the Canadian troops in 1931. A gun used for artillery training of the permanent force and of the nonpermanent army militia, range finders and other fittings were located in the building in 1936.<sup>66</sup> Since the commanding position of the drill shed was essential to the training, the Department of National Defence made retention of the building a condition of the proposed transfer to the Department of the Interior in 1936.

A six-inch gun was removed from the shed in 1937. "That Was The Week", 30 years later, described the scene of July 1937:

The last piece of artillery in the old fort on Citadel Hill was dismantled and moved to the Gun Wharf. Hundreds of spectators gathered on the hill to watch the RCA party, under command of Major W.H. Dobbie, DSO, move the six-inch gun out of a shed on the south side of the Citadel and across the moat.

The piece, weighing more than seven tons and having a muzzle 27 feet in length, was dismantled in the shed. The gun was parbuckled across the moat by three parties of gunners using rope tackles. On the Citadel side there was a check tackle party, on the other side a parbuckle party, and a muzzle hauling party.

It was understood that the gun would be packed for eventual shipping to the west coast.<sup>67</sup>

In the 1936 transfer negotiations, the Department of National Defence included the drill shed in the buildings which it wanted to retain.<sup>68</sup>

During World War II the building was used as a gymnasium.<sup>69</sup> The shed was still standing in 1942, but only the foundation and floor remained by 1950. (See Figures 6 and 26).

### *Structural Details*

The drill shed was a wooden building, approximately 90 ft. by 25 ft. It was finished with wood shingles and had a rounded roof.<sup>70</sup> An extension, approximately 12 ft. square, was located on the east wall and extended in- to the east parapet. Two pipes, either vent or stove pipes, came out through the east wall, one on either side of the extension. The southeast corner of the drill shed was angled rather than square. (See Figures 25 and 32).

There were ten windows in the east wall - five at both the south and north ends of the wall. There was also one window in both the north and south walls of the extension. All the windows were shuttered in a 1920s photo.

The shed had two doors. A wide door was located in the angled corner at the south end. There was a door with a set of steps and possibly a porch in the north section of the west wall.

### Southwest Demi-bastion

#### Wheeler's Shop

One of the buildings handed over to the Canadian government in 1906 was a wooden wheeler's shop, located on the rampart of the southwest demi-bastion. (See Figure 7). Little is known about it. In 1911 there was a proposal to build a recreation establishment on the rampart.<sup>71</sup> Construction of the building would have necessitated the demolition of the wheeler's shop. The building was removed sometime between July of 1924 and July of 1928.<sup>72</sup>

The building measured approximately 20 ft. by 15 ft. and had a pitch roof.<sup>73</sup> (See Figure 32). The plans give conflicting locations for the openings of the building. A window is centered on the south, east and west walls and a door on the north wall in 1908 and 1922. The door was shown on the south wall in 1924.

West Curtain

## Unidentified Building III

A small unidentified Quonset hut stood on the rampart, at the south end of the west curtain, between 1942 and 1950. (See Figures 6 and 35).

Northwest Demi-bastion

## Side-Arm Store

A side-arm store on the rampart of the northwest demi-bastion was included in the 1906 transfer. (See Figure 7). Early plans of the Canadian period label the building "Side Arm Store No. 2".<sup>74</sup> It last appears on a 1910 plan.<sup>75</sup>

The structure was similar to the other side-arm stores of the Citadel.<sup>76</sup> It was a wooden building which measured approximately 20 feet by 10 feet. There were two windows on the north wall and a door on the east wall.

Redan

## Wooden Upper Storey

When the Canadians assumed control of the Citadel, there was an upper wooden storey on the redan. (See Figures 7 and 32). The building ran the full length and width of the redan and included the platforms which extended over the parade. A rifle range was located in the north wing.<sup>77</sup> In 1922 there were demolition stores and signal stores in the south wing.

The south wing was mainly an open area.<sup>78</sup> There were three rooms in the south section of the wing; two rooms extended over the south platform and the third room was adjacent to them. Twelve windows and a door faced the parade. It seems that only the four windows in the three rooms were glazed while the other openings in the south wing were shuttered. A door was located in the south end wall. There were two embrasures in the east wall of the south wing and one at the salient angle.

The rifle range took slightly more than half of the north wing.<sup>79</sup> It was 122 ft. 6 in. long and 11 ft. 1 in. wide. Targets, lights and a reflector were located at the salient angle. There were two firing points, 8 ft. 6 in. wide and 8 ft. wide, situated 72 ft. and 94 ft., respectively,

from the targets. A partition ran along the dwarf wall from the corner of the redan to the end of the platform.

In addition to the rifle range, the north wing had a large unidentified area at one end and a room on the platform. There were sixteen windows and a door overlooking the parade and one embrasure overlooking the ditch. An exterior door was located in the end wall.

The roof of the redan building was almost flat. A tar and gravel roof was renewed in the 1924-25 fiscal year.<sup>80</sup> In 1916 and 1936 part of the roof was damaged by storms.<sup>81</sup>

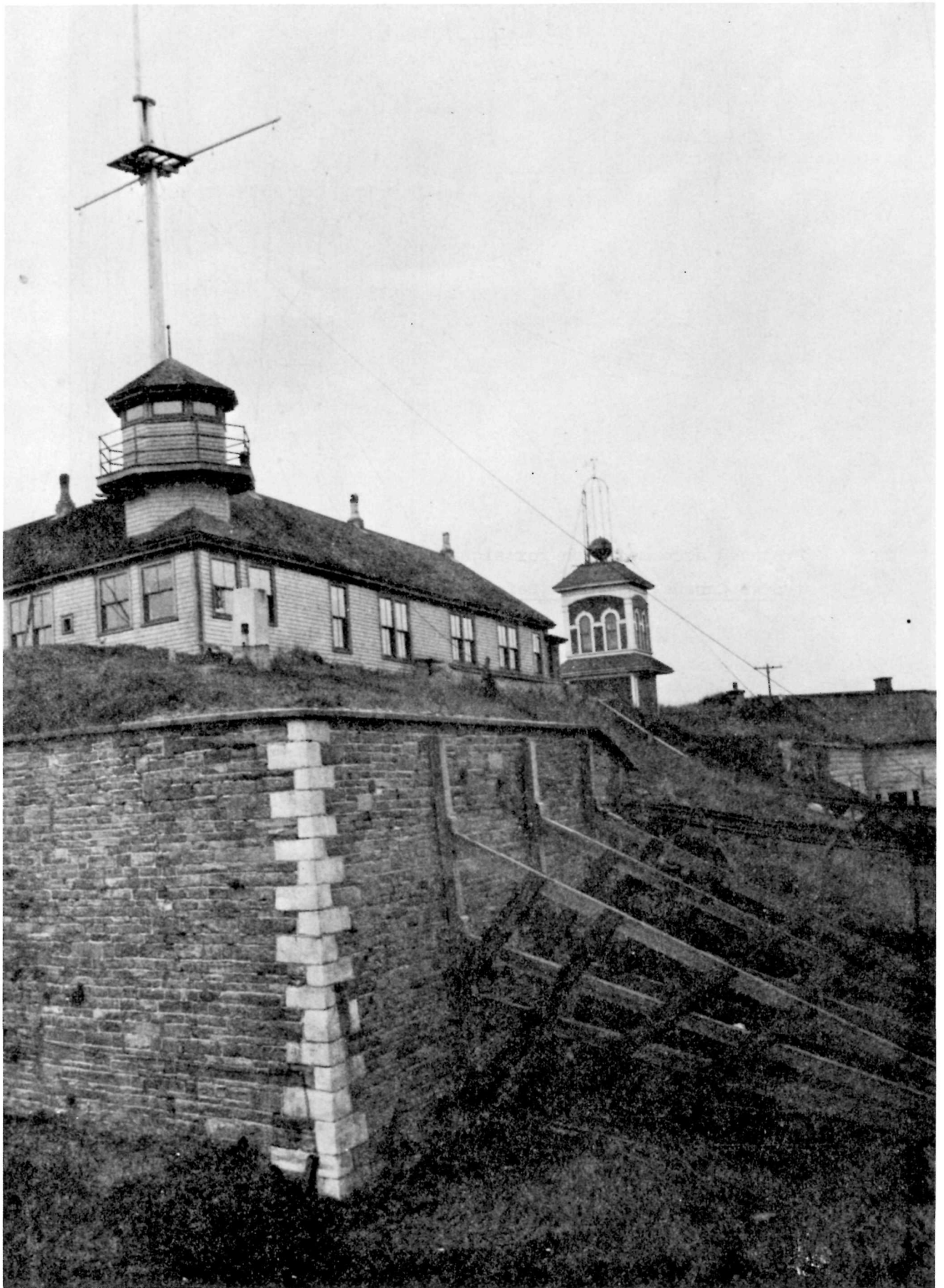
The redan building was in poor condition by November of 1936. When a restoration project was carried out at the Citadel in 1938 - 40, the work crew dismantled the building.<sup>82</sup> The brick which had been added to the redan chimneys when the wooden upper storey was constructed was the only remnant of the building at the end of the Canadian period. (See Figure 20).

- 21 View of the east slope, circa 1929. The drill shed, signal station and time ball gave the east slope a distinctive appearance during the Canadian period. (Mr. Warren Schaffner and the Public Archives of Nova Scotia)



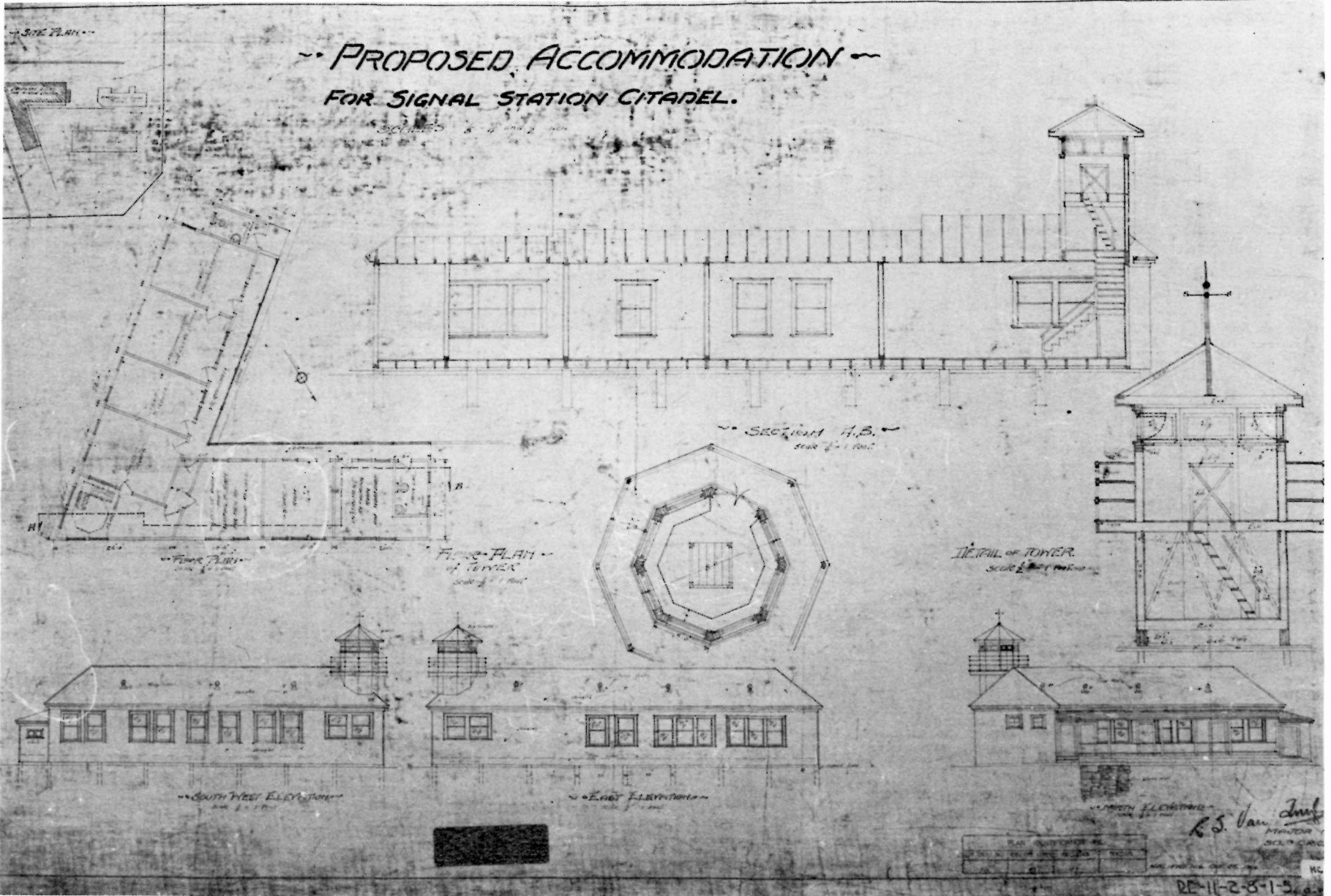


- 22 "The Citadel Walls in Halifax, Nova Scotia, 8 October 1927." A good photograph of the signal station and time ball and of the timber strutts supporting the escarp of the southeast salient. (Public Archives of Canada. PA-87819.)



23 Proposed accommodation for signal station, 25 October 1916.  
(Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)

~ PROPOSED ACCOMMODATION ~  
FOR SIGNAL STATION CITADEL.



R.S. Van der ...

RE-11-2-8-13

- 24 Photo of parade from northeast salient, 1950. Compare with figure 10. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 22, HS - 12483)



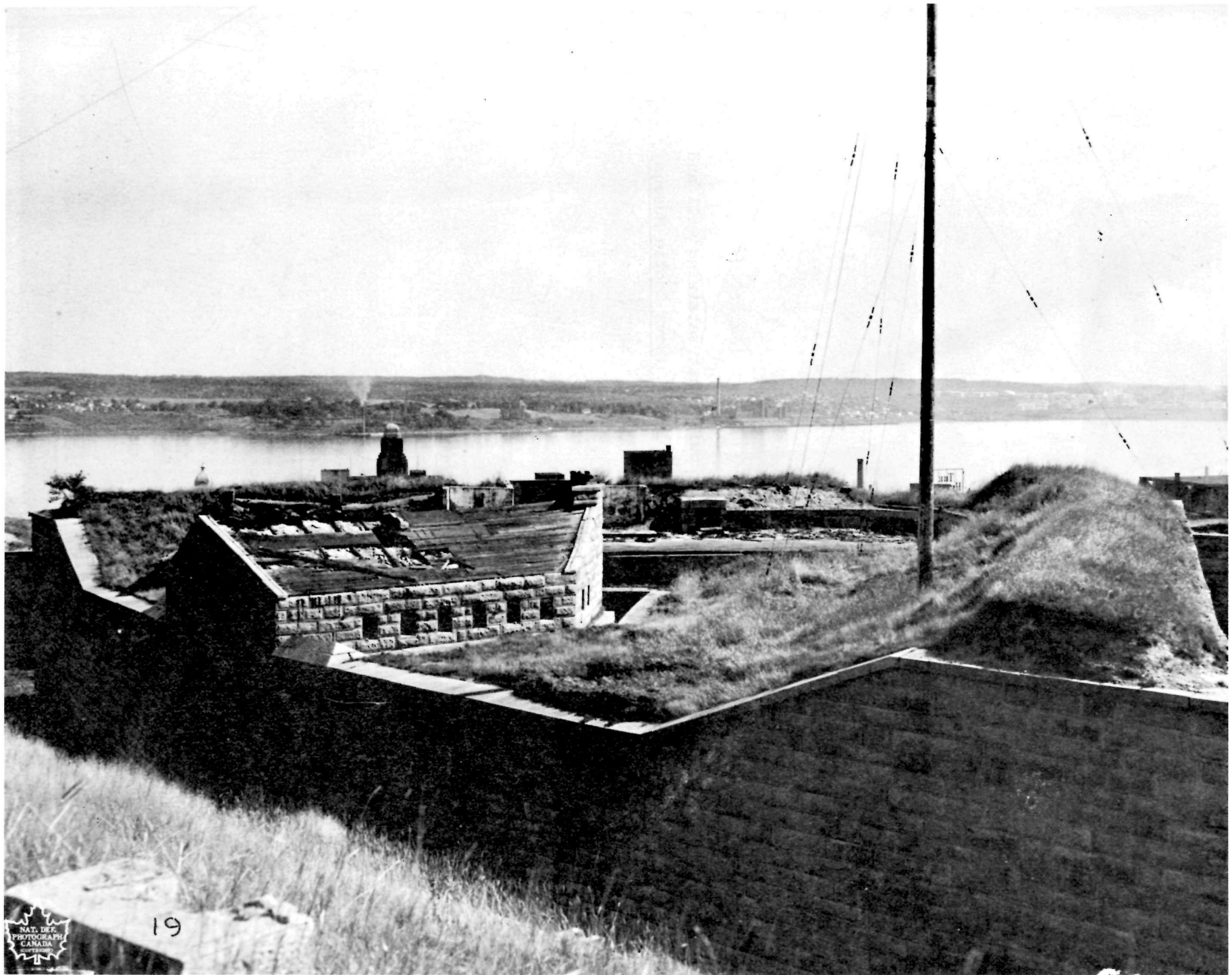
- 25 "Citadel and moat at Halifax, N. S." Photo of south mavelin and southeast salient from the glacis, showing the drill shed, signal station and time ball. (Public Archives of Canada. PA 48378. Department of Interior collection.)







26 The south ravelin in 1950. The guardhouse was in bad condition and only the foundation of the drill shed remained. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 19, HS - 12480)



NAT. DEPT.  
PHOTOGRAPHY  
CANADA

19

27 View from north end of parade, showing east retaining wall and buildings on the east rampart, July 1928. (Nova Scotia Museum, P 170 28.123 (6297).)



## Citadel Walls

There is little detailed structural information on the Citadel walls during the Canadian period. Work ranging from pointing to demolition was carried out by the Unemployment Relief Project. A restoration project from 1938 to 1940 cleaned up part of the debris left by the Relief Project and reconstructed a section of counterscarp.

The need for a substantial amount of additional work was identified in three studies made to support a transfer of the Citadel for development as a historic site. In July of 1936, L.R. LaFleche, Deputy Minister of the Department of National Defence, outlined the work which had been completed by the Unemployment Relief Project and the work which remained to be done.<sup>1</sup> N.A. Sparks, National Parks Engineer, made an inspection in the fall of 1936 and drew up an estimate for work required.<sup>2</sup> There was no obvious change in the condition of the walls by 1950 when the engineers made their report to the Massey Commission.<sup>3</sup>

The ironstone walls of the Citadel were generally in poor condition during the Canadian period. Timber struts were added to four of the ironstone escarps circa 1920. The Unemployment Relief Project proposed either partial or complete dismantling of almost all of the ironstone escarps and counterscarps. It succeeded, however, in dismantling only the counterscarp of the west ravelin. Work was needed on most of the ironstone walls in 1950.

The ashlar granite walls were generally in better condition than the ironstone walls during the Canadian period. Pointing was proposed for most of the granite walls during the Unemployment Relief Project. Almost half of the retaining walls were scheduled to be rebuilt. Part of the retaining walls of the west curtain and northwest demi-bastion were dismantled.

The walls of the components of the Citadel are discussed below, starting with the southeast salient and proceeding in a clockwise direction around to the redan. (See Figure 28, Citadel trace, for names of components). The window and door openings of the retaining walls and escarps are dealt with in the chapter on the casemates and demi-casemates.

### Southeast Salient

Escarp.

#### *Left Face.*

There were two masonry buttresses on the left face of the southeast salient at the beginning of the Canadian period.<sup>4</sup> By 1920 a section of the left face has collapsed, probably under the weight of the new signal station which had been constructed on the rampart.<sup>5</sup> One hundred and five feet had given way at the top of the escarp and the earth fill had slid down to form a bank in the ditch. The break in the wall remained to the end of the Canadian period. A proposal was made in 1920 to repair and reinforce the wall.<sup>6</sup> A concrete wall was to be built, running 93 feet in length and extending seven feet from the wall. Three timber strutts were to be placed on both sides of the new concrete wall. The elevation shows strutts constructed of three 8 in. by 12 in. braces with four crosspieces and two cross braces of 3 in. by 12 in. The strutts were to be braced against three concrete blocks at the bottom of the opposite counterscarp wall.

The 1920 proposal was executed in part. Three timber braces were placed on both sides of the collapse, as proposed. Two additional strutts, immediately adjacent to the collapse, spanned the ditch and were braced against the counterscarp. The concrete wall was not constructed. (See Figures 22 and 32).

The condition of the left face changed very little between 1920 and 1950. The face received minimal attention during the Unemployment Relief Project. The initial plan was to completely dismantle and reconstruct 160 feet of the left face, starting at the salient angle.<sup>7</sup> Although plans in 1933 and 1934 indicate "work in progress" on that section of wall, later plans do not refer to it and it seems that very little, if anything, was done. The north end of the wall, from sallyport 1 to the re-entrant angle with the redan, was pointed at the beginning of 1935.<sup>8</sup>

When Sparks and LaFleche made their recommendations for the Citadel in 1936,<sup>9</sup> they emphasized the poor state of the south escarp and ignored the left face of the salient. Strutts continued to support the face.

By 1950 three of the original eight strutts were gone; only five remained of the six constructed according to the 1920 plan.<sup>10</sup> The engineers reporting to the Massey Commission identified the need for the reconstruction

of approximately 85 feet to replace the collapsed wall. Dismantling and reconstruction were required for almost another 100 feet, 67 feet to the south of the collapse and 32 feet to the north. (See Figure 31).

### *Right Face*

No major work was done on the right face of the southeast salient during the Canadian period. A timber strutt was added to the west of casemate 4.<sup>11</sup> The strutt followed the 1920 design except that the concrete block in the ditch was an independent feature and did not abut against the counterscarp. The support was in place by 1923 and probably was erected at the same time as the struts on the left face. (See Figure 32).

The entire right face was in poor condition by 1932. (See Figure 33). The east end needed to be partially taken down and reconstructed, from the salient angle to the west wall of casemate 4. The next 80 feet, including the section supported by the strutt, needed to be taken down to the foundation and reconstructed. The remainder required partial dismantling and reconstruction. None of this was done by the Unemployment Relief Project.

Complete dismantling, removal of the earth fill and reconstruction were still required in 1936.<sup>12</sup> Sparks described the wall as "badly cracked with bulges, out of plumb".<sup>13</sup>

The engineers reporting to the Massey Commission in 1950 were less critical. They saw a requirement for dismantling and rebuilding 10 feet of the face at the salient angle and doing minor work for 20 feet west of the openings of casemate 4. (See Figure 31). The timber strutt remained in place.<sup>14</sup>

### Retaining Wall

Ten masonry buttresses support the retaining walls of the southeast salient. Six are located on the east wall and four on the south wall. The buttresses appear on plans and photographs throughout the Canadian period.

In 1934 and 1936 pointing was proposed for the east wall and a section of the south wall from the corner to the stairs.<sup>15</sup> (See Figure 29). The pointing crew of the Unemployment Relief Project did not reach this area



before the end of the project.

The south retaining wall of the southeast salient was in serious condition during the last 16 years of the Canadian period. No major problem had been identified at the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project. In 1934, however, it was recognized that the section of wall running west from the stairs was in bad condition and in need of rebuilding.<sup>16</sup> The work schedule gave it low priority, ranking it eleventh in a list of 16 work requirements. When the Project closed, the work had not been done.

In 1936, the wall was "badly out of plumb with bulges" and required immediate attention.<sup>17</sup> LaFleche and Sparks recommended the removal of the load behind the wall and the dismantling and reconstruction of the wall. Sparks stated that the stairs were in poor condition and included the entire south retaining wall of the salient in his recommendation. LaFleche's comments dealt with only the west section of the wall running from the stairs to the demi-bastion. Once again nothing was done, for Sparks and LaFleche were simply advising the Department of the Interior on the scope of the work which would be required after a transfer, which did not take place until 1951.

In 1950 the section of south retaining wall from the bottom of the stairs to the re-entrant angle was described as "failure evident, to be demolished and replaced".<sup>18</sup> The seven demi-casemates were in even worse condition and needed replacing. The engineers recommended the dismantling of the wall to the spring of the arches. Reconstruction would then have been necessary for the retaining wall, staircase and the back and pier walls of the demi-casemates. A concrete backing was proposed for the main wall. (See Figure 31).

Seven demi-casemates in the east retaining wall also had collapsed and needed replacing by 1950.<sup>19</sup> Recommendations included removing the earth above, removing the brick arches and repairing the back and pier walls.

### South Ravelin

#### Escarps and Gorge Wall

The escarps and gorge wall of the south ravelin were pointed between August and October of 1934.<sup>20</sup> In 1936 the ravelin was in good condition, as



were the other two ravelins, after having received "complete reconditioning" during the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>21</sup>

By 1950 the ravelin needed considerable work.<sup>22</sup> Demolition and reconstruction were required for approximately 30 feet in both sections of the gorge wall. (See Figure 31). In addition, \$13,100 of work was projected for the ravelin and its guardhouse - an amount equal to the total estimate for the other two ravelins. Minor repairs and rebuilding were necessary for approximately 47 feet at the south end of the right escarp and 25 feet at the north end. The masonry breastworks were to be rebuilt and the earth restored to an original contour. Walls were to be pointed and the foundations of the drill hall removed.

#### Guardhouse

The guardhouse was probably pointed by the Unemployment Relief men.

By 1950 the guardhouse was in a deplorable state. (See Figure 26). The engineers' report recommended the removal and replacement of the roof, floors and stairs, the repair of the chimney and fireplace, the cleaning and pointing of the interior walls and the replacement of the windows and doors.<sup>23</sup> The guardhouses of the other two ravelins were in similar condition.

#### Southwest Demi-bastion

The southwest demi-bastion was in a state of disrepair throughout the Canadian period. In 1911 the walls apparently were considered to be relatively stable, for construction of a large recreation establishment on the rampart was proposed.<sup>24</sup> Inspections of the demi-bastion in 1932, 1936 and 1950 revealed the need for major work.

#### Escarp

##### *Left Face*

Two timber struts reinforced the left face throughout the most of the period.<sup>25</sup> The struts were the same construction as those at the south-

east salient and were probably erected at that same time, circa 1920. (See Figure 32). They were still supporting the wall in 1950.

The Unemployment Relief Project scheduled work on the entire face. Drastic measures were considered in 1932. Partial dismantling and reconstruction were recommended at both ends of the wall - the back walls of casemates 5 and 6, and the back walls of casemates 51 and 52, west to the salient angle. The 80 feet between the two sets of casemates were to be taken down to the foundations and reconstructed. (See Figure 33).

The 1934 work schedule called for minor repairs and pointing.<sup>26</sup> Progress report plans for 1933 and part of 1934 indicated that work was being done on the left face. This was not reflected in later plans, however, and the wall was still in poor condition in 1936.<sup>27</sup> Sparks recommended complete rebuilding while LaFleche recommended partial rebuilding and pointing.

The 1950 inspection of the Citadel reiterated the need for the reconstruction of the wall. Approximately 140 feet from the re-entrant angle to the west side of casemate 52 were to be demolished and replaced. The rest of the wall, from casemate 52 to the salient angle, needed minor rebuilding or repairs. (See Figure 31).

### *Right Face*

The right face was included in a section drawn through the demi-bastion on a 1911 plan.<sup>28</sup> At the point where the section cut through the wall, the elevation of the top of the wall was 93.76 feet and the bottom of the wall was 69.76 feet. The base line for these elevations is not indicated.

The condition of the right face was better than the left face during the Canadian period. Pointing was scheduled by the Unemployment Relief Project. (See Figure 29).

Opinions varied on the condition of the wall in 1936.<sup>29</sup> LaFleche stated that the face was in good condition. Later in the year, Sparks incorporated the face with the other escarps of the west front which were in poor condition and required "partial rebuilding, and pointing of the whole". In view of LaFleche's comments and those of the engineers in 1950, it is likely that the body of the right face required little more than pointing in 1936. The coping was out of place.

The only problem identified on the right face in 1950 was the need for minor work at the north end of the wall, at the corner shared with the flank. (See Figure 31).

### *Flank*

The flank of the southwest demi-bastion had a continuing requirement for restoration throughout the Canadian period. Partial dismantling and reconstruction were scheduled in 1932. (See Figure 33). Minor repairs and pointing were called for in 1934, 1936 and 1950.<sup>30</sup> Work on the walls never seems to have progressed past the recommendation stage.

### Retaining Wall

The retaining wall of the southwest demi-bastion was made up of two components - the wall from sallyport 2 to the blast wall, and the area wall around the south magazine.

During the latter part of the Canadian period the retaining wall between the sallyport and the blast wall was in the same state of deterioration as the adjoining retaining wall of the southeast salient. The need for rebuilding was identified in 1934.<sup>31</sup> In 1936 the wall was badly out of plumb and needed to be dismantled and rebuilt;<sup>32</sup> LaFleche and Sparks stressed the urgency of the problem in their proposed work schedules. While the serious condition of the southeast salient retaining wall continued to be emphasized in 1950, the adjacent section of demi-bastion retaining wall was not mentioned. (See Figure 31).

The area wall around the south magazine was included in the schedule of work projected for the Unemployment Relief Project in 1934.<sup>33</sup> Pointing was proposed for the west and south sides of the area wall. (See Figure 29). Rebuilding was proposed for the north side which supported the ramp to the rampart of the demi-bastion. A recommendation was made that the work on the north section of wall and the ramp be done in conjunction with the work on the west curtain.

The condition of the area wall had not changed by 1936.<sup>34</sup> LaFleche found the south and west sections to be in "fair condition", requiring

pointing and minor repairs, but made no comment on the north wall. Sparks included the north wall in his estimate for the dismantling and rebuilding of the west curtain.

The coping of the area wall was out of place at the northwest and southwest corners in 1950.<sup>35</sup> The engineers did not comment on the walls, which seem to have been in good condition.

### Blast Wall

There is no evidence to suggest that any major work was done on the blast wall during the Canadian period. The wall appears to be in good condition in 1928 and 1950 photographs.<sup>36</sup> (See Figure 18).

### Ramp

The work projected for the north section of the demi-bastion's area wall in 1934 would have necessitated removal of the earth from the ramp. This requirement was also implicit in the 1936 recommendation to demolish and rebuild both supporting walls of the ramp.<sup>37</sup> It seems that no work was done and the ramp remained undisturbed.

By 1950 the lower end of the ramp's retaining walls had disappeared, reducing the curve of the ramp.<sup>38</sup> On the south side, a rubble masonry retaining wall ran into the blast wall. The north retaining wall had a short, steep granite section which abutted against the curtain retaining wall and was built up and extended with rubble masonry.

### Stairway to Casemates 51 and 52

There is no structural information on the stairway from the terreplein to casemates 51 and 52 in the Canadian period. The stairway must have been in better condition than its counterpart in the northwest demi-bastion at the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project, for the northwest staircase was immediately dismantled.

By 1950 the stairs in the southwest demi-bastion needed to be replaced and the stairs and adjacent wall were to be demolished and reconstructed.<sup>39</sup>

A fence around the top of the stairwell closed the stairs to the public.

### West Curtain

#### Escarp

There were three timber struts on the west curtain's escarp opposite the west ravelin. How long they were in place is not known. It is probable that they were constructed in, or shortly after, 1920 when similar struts were placed at the southeast salient and southwest demi-bastion. The struts appear in only one source, an aerial photo taken prior to 1925.<sup>40</sup> They seem to have been removed by 1942.<sup>41</sup> Certainly there were no struts on the escarp in September of 1950.<sup>42</sup>

The Unemployment Relief Project proposal in 1932 called for drastic measures for the curtain escarp. One hundred and twenty feet of the north end of the wall and the section of wall behind casemates 9 and 10, at the south end, were to be taken down to their foundations. The intermediate section was to be partially dismantled. (See Figure 33).

Subsequent plans were more circumspect in their recommendations. The need for minor repairs and pointing was reiterated between 1934 and 1937.<sup>43</sup> Actual work was limited; several progress reports between February of 1933 and December of 1934 reflect activity on the wall but later plans do not report work either in progress or completed. In 1936 most of the escarp on the west front, including the curtain escarp, still required partial rebuilding and pointing. Sparks stated that:

This section is generally in poor condition, and badly cracked in places. The entire length of coping has been thrust out of place. Approximately 60% of the section should be rebuilt.<sup>44</sup>

Work on the wall was complicated by the fact that the west curtain escarp was literally buried in dirt which had been piled in front of it during the Unemployment Relief Project. Hundreds of loads of earth were removed from the Citadel ditch during the restoration work between 1938 and 1940.<sup>45</sup>

The curtain escarp was crumbling in 1950. Total demolition and reconstruction were considered necessary. (See Figures 31 and 40)

### Retaining Wall

The retaining wall of the west curtain was considered to be in dangerous condition at the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project and was scheduled for dismantling and reconstruction. The extent of dismantling considered necessary varies on the plans. The 1934 plan which outlined the work on the Citadel walls showed that the entire retaining wall of the curtain would have to be rebuilt. (See Figure 29). The plan made at the beginning of the Project in 1932, however, anticipated work on 170 feet of the retaining wall north of sallyport 3. Partial dismantling was forecast for 20 feet of wall which contained demi-casemates 29 and 30 and for 125 feet of wall which fronted sallyport 4 and casemates 54, 55, 11, 12, 13, and 14. Complete dismantling to foundation level was projected for 125 feet, from demi-casemates 31 to 41. (See Figures 33).

It seems that the Unemployment Relief Project started working on the retaining wall at the beginning of 1933 and continued sporadically until the Project ended.<sup>46</sup> The progress reports give only vague details about the work and compound the problem by discussing the retaining walls of the curtain and the southwest demi-bastion together. The last Project plan, reporting work done to 30 April 1936, showed work in progress from sallyport 3 to the north end of the wall. Nothing had been completed.

Photos taken for the Massey Commission in 1950 and one photo taken in 1936 give an idea of what had taken place during the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>47</sup> (See Figures 35 and 36). The stretch of wall between sallyport 3 and casemate 54 was dismantled to the top of the arches of the 13 demi-casemates. The back walls of the demi-casemates were left intact but the arches were removed and little attention was given to the pier walls. The plan seems to have been to reconstruct the front of the pier walls to the spring of the arches and to build an ironstone wall between the pier walls, at the front of each demi-casemate. Foundations for the front wall were laid in August of 1935.<sup>48</sup> Reconstruction work started at the north end so that demi-casemates 37 to 41 were completed when the Unemployment Relief Project terminated.

The remains of the dismantled retaining wall were left exposed to the elements and vulnerable to further deterioration for the rest of the Canadian period. In 1936 the demi-casemate back walls were still standing but

the pier walls between what seem to be demi-casemates 31 and 34 were no longer in evidence.<sup>49</sup>

Sparks and LaFleche held different views about the retaining wall in 1936.<sup>50</sup> LaFleche stated that 150 feet of dismantled wall needed to be rebuilt and that the ramparts should be restored to their former shape, at an estimated cost of less than \$4,000. Sparks felt that the remainder of the wall, 270 feet, should be dismantled and the entire wall should be reconstructed, at an estimated cost of \$21,500.00. The question was academic, as nothing was done.

By 1950 the earth of the west curtain had formed a bank behind the reconstructed front walls of demi-casemates 37 to 41, and had completely buried any remnants of the original back walls.<sup>51</sup> The back and pier walls of demi-casemates 29 to 36 were in various stages of deterioration. The 1935 foundation for the proposed reconstruction work on demi-casemates 34 and 36 was still in place. At the two ends of the dismantled section, the arches of sallyport 3 and casemate 54 were partially exposed. The ground between the retaining wall and the Cavalier and the Brick Block was littered with stones of the retaining wall.

The report of the Massey Commission on proposed restoration at the Citadel recommended the removal of the work done in the 1930s and the reconstruction of the retaining wall and its demi-casemates, from sallyport 3 to casemate 54.<sup>52</sup> (See Figure 31).

### West Ravelin

#### Escarps and Gorge Wall

The escarps and gorge wall of the west ravelin were pointed between August and October of 1934.<sup>53</sup> Minor repairs were also carried out, entailing only an estimated \$80.00 worth of materials.

The walls were in good condition in 1936 and 1950.<sup>54</sup> Pointing was a requirement in 1950. The engineers' report recommended that the masonry breastworks be rebuilt and the earth be restored to its "original" contour. The details for the work were not outlined. A sum of \$7500.00 was projected for work on the ravelin, about half of which was to be spent on the guard-house.

### Guardhouse

A new roof with asbestos shingles was put on the guardhouse of the west ravelin in August of 1934.<sup>55</sup> By 1950 the roof needed to be repaired.<sup>56</sup>

The interior of the guardhouse was in poor condition in 1950.<sup>57</sup> The floors, stairs, windows and doors needed to be replaced. The chimney and fireplace required repairs, while the interior walls needed cleaning and pointing.

### Northwest Demi-bastion

#### Escarp

#### *Flank*

Although progress plans between February of 1933 and July of 1934 reported that work was in progress on the flank of the northwest demi-bastion,<sup>58</sup> it seems that little or nothing was actually accomplished. In December of 1934 minor repairs and pointing were still needed.<sup>59</sup> Progress report plans from September of 1934 to April of 1936 did not indicate either past or recent work. Certainly the bad state of the wall in 1936 and 1950 suggests that the flank had been neglected for some time.

Major work on the flank was planned at the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project. It was proposed to completely dismantle 40 feet of wall adjoining the corner with the west curtain and to partially dismantle the rest of the wall. (See Figure 33). As seen in section on the progress report plans, the flank was to be partially dismantled and the bottom of the wall banked with earth. (See Figure 34). This apparently never got beyond the planning stage.

In 1936 the flank was in poor condition.<sup>60</sup> Like the escarps of the west curtain and part of the southwest demi-bastion, the flank was badly cracked and the coping out of place. Pointing and partial rebuilding were required. The corner shared with the left face of the demi-bastion was out of plumb and reconstruction was recommended. Once again nothing seems to have been done; the description of the state of the wall in 1936 was equally valid in 1950. (See Figure 31).



*Left Face*

The left face of the northwest demi-bastion seems to have been largely ignored by the two reconstruction schemes in the Canadian period. The progress report plans indicate that the excavation of the earth of the bastion was meant to extend back to the center of the wall and that this section of wall was to be banked on the ditch side. (See Figure 34). In 1934 partial dismantling and rebuilding of the face were recommended.<sup>61</sup> The excavation of the demi-bastion was minimal, however, and no work on the face was recorded.

By 1936 the corner shared with the flank was out of plumb and in need of reconstruction.<sup>62</sup> By 1950 the whole wall was in poor condition; approximately 35 feet at the south end required demolition and reconstruction and the rest of the wall, approximately 160 feet, required minor repairs. (See Figure 31).

*Right Face*

The right face of the northwest demi-bastion was pointed during the late summer of 1934, and completed by 30 September 1934.<sup>63</sup> The wall remained in good condition in 1936 and 1950.<sup>64</sup>

## Retaining Wall

At the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project, part of the crew was put to work on the retaining wall of the northwest demi-bastion. The south and west sections of the wall, including the demi-casemates, were to be dismantled to their foundations. (See Figures 33 and 34). A total of 160 feet of retaining wall was to be treated in this manner.

By the end of February 1933, 35 per cent of the wall had been dismantled and 30 per cent of the earth behind had been excavated.<sup>65</sup> The men were soon diverted to other jobs, however, and progress slowed. By 31 October 1933 the figures were still only 35 per cent and 37 per cent.<sup>66</sup> Later plans showed the work simply "in progress". The details of the work done between 1932 and 1936 are not known.

In 1950 the north section of the retaining wall seems to have been

intact.<sup>67</sup> The top of the west wall had been removed to just above the arch of the demi-casemates. The state of the south wall is uncertain; the photos suggest that the east end was intact and the west end had been partially dismantled. The Massey engineers recommended demolition and reconstruction of the west wall, with the exception of the demi-casemate back walls.<sup>68</sup> Repairs and pointing were recommended for casemate 15A and the demi-casemates in the north wall. Demolition and reconstruction were required for the east end of the south wall, beside the steps to the rampart.

#### Steps to Rampart

When the north magazine was replaced by the Canteen at the end of the British period, the section of demi-bastion area wall adjacent to the steps to the ramparts was lowered to the level of the steps. The steps are seen in the background of two prisoner-of-war photographs taken circa 1915. There were iron railings on both sides of the steps, with the outside (north) railing located on the edge of the coping stone. (See Figures 3 and 4).

The steps and area wall were scheduled to be dismantled during the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>69</sup> From at least February of 1933 to the end of the Project, the work was reported to be in progress.<sup>70</sup> It is doubtful that anything major was accomplished.

The south wall and part of the north wall of the steps were considered ready to fail in 1950.<sup>71</sup> Demolition and replacement of the walls were recommended and an estimate of \$300 was made for the stairway repairs. A photo taken for the engineers' report shows the bottom steps intact but the coping stone and railings missing.

#### Stairway to Casemates 57 and 58

The stairwell on the ramparts which provided access to the former defence casemates, C57 and C58, was dismantled and filled in during the Unemployment Relief Project. The January progress report stated that a considerable amount of ashlar masonry had been salvaged from the stairwell.<sup>72</sup> The work was not completed, however, so it is not known how extensive the dismantling was.

The stairwell was still buried under a mound of earth at the time of the report to the Massey Commission.<sup>73</sup> The engineers were unable to determine the condition of the stairwell and steps but assumed that they were still there and would require reconstruction.

### North Ravelin

#### Escarpments and Gorge Wall

Fourteen hundred square yards of the walls of the north ravelin was pointed between 1 August 1934 and 30 June 1935.<sup>74</sup> In addition, 180 cubic yards were dismantled and rebuilt between 1 September 1934 and 31 July 1935. At least half of the reconstruction took place on the left escarp.<sup>75</sup> The remainder seems to have been on the right escarp and on the west end of the gorge wall. The work included excavating 520 cubic yards of earth and grading. In 1936 the ravelin walls were reported to be in good condition as a result of the reconditioning done by the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>76</sup>

A restoration of the ravelin in 1950 would have entailed a limited amount of work.<sup>77</sup> A small section of the left escarp, approximately 17 feet, needed to be taken down and rebuilt. The engineers also recommended rebuilding the breastworks, restoring the earth to its "original" contour and pointing all walls.

#### Guardhouse

The roof of the guardhouse of the north ravelin was replaced during the Unemployment Relief Project. It was removed in September of 1934 and replaced in July of 1935.<sup>78</sup> Asphalt shingles were probably used, as on the west ravelin guardhouse. It is probable that the guardhouse walls were pointed with the other ravelin walls.

The guardhouse was basically a shell in 1950.<sup>79</sup> Windows and doors were missing. The roof, both floors and stairway needed to be removed and replaced. The chimney and fireplace required repairs while the interior walls required cleaning and pointing.

Northeast Salient

## Escarp

*Left Face*

The crew of the Unemployment Relief Project pointed the left face of the northeast salient before the end of September 1934.<sup>80</sup> Minor repairs or rebuilding of approximately 60 feet were required near the east end of the wall in 1950. (See Figure 31).

*Right Face*

The right face of the northeast salient remained in good condition throughout the Canadian period. Pointing was scheduled during the Unemployment Relief Project and LaFleche indicated in 1936 that it had been done.<sup>81</sup> However, no work was documented in the progress reports and accompanying plans of the project. By 1950 minor repairs or rebuilding were needed on the back wall of C27 and approximately 75 feet near the north end of the wall. (See Figure 31).

## Retaining Wall

The retaining wall of the northeast salient remained in good condition during the Canadian period. Pointing was recommended in 1934 and 1936 but was not done.<sup>82</sup>

The corner of the redan and northeast salient needed partial dismantling and rebuilding in 1934 and 1936. The wall was out of plumb but not in serious condition. The engineers of the Massey Commission, in 1950, recommended that the corner and stairway be repaired, reset and pointed.<sup>83</sup>

Redan

## Escarp

*Left Face*

Pointing was scheduled for the left face of the redan along with all the other north and east escarps in 1934. (See Figure 29). None of the progress report plans for the Unemployment Relief Project show any work on this face, however. The condition of the wall in 1950 apparently satisfied

the Massey engineers, for they did not include it in their restoration estimates.

### *Right Face*

The right face was scheduled for pointing during the Unemployment Relief Project. A small section, from the re-entrant angle with the southeast salient to the gate, had been pointed by March of 1935.<sup>84</sup> The job was completed by August of 1935.<sup>85</sup>

The wall was not mentioned in the outline of work identified in 1950 for restoration of the Citadel.

### Retaining Wall

Pointing was recommended for the redan retaining wall in 1934 and 1936.<sup>86</sup> In August of 1935 pointing was in progress on the section of wall from the Citadel entrance to casemate 44.<sup>87</sup>

The stairs at the two end corners of the redan wall were in poor condition at the end of the Canadian period. In 1934 pointing was recommended for the corner of the redan and southeast salient while partial rebuilding was recommended for the corner of the redan and northeast salient.<sup>88</sup> In 1936 and 1950 both corners required partial rebuilding and pointing.<sup>89</sup>

### Counterscarp

The Unemployment Relief Project pointed most of the counterscarp. The two walls opposite the west ravelin escarps were dismantled, as were the adjoining sections of west counterscarp at the corners of the ravelin counterscarps. The counterscarps at the north end of the Citadel were scheduled to be dismantled and rebuilt but little work seems to have been done on them. Part of the west ravelin counterscarp was reconstructed in 1939. The counterscarps of the redan and the south and north ravelins were the only counterscarp walls which did not require repairs or reconstruction in 1950.

The counterscarps will be discussed by component, beginning with the southeast salient and moving around the Citadel in a clockwise direction.

### Southeast Salient

The counterscarp of the southeast salient was pointed by the Unemployment Relief crew by March of 1935.<sup>90</sup> In 1950 the engineers reported the need to demolish and rebuild approximately 105 feet of south counterscarp, running east from the corner of the south ravelin counterscarp.<sup>91</sup> The same treatment was required for six and a half bays of the musketry gallery where the walls had shifted under pressure. Two and a half bays required minor rebuilding or repair. (See Figure 31).

The only requirement identified for the east counterscarp in 1950 was some minor work in the first full bay at the south end of the musketry gallery.

### South Ravelin

The counterscarp of the south ravelin was pointed during the Unemployment Relief Project. The east wall was finished by 31 December 1934 and the west wall by 31 March 1935.<sup>92</sup> One bay of the musketry gallery at the corner with the southeast salient counterscarp was in need of minor repair or rebuilding in 1950. (See Figure 31).

### Southwest Demi-bastion

#### *South Counterscarp*

The south counterscarp opposite the southwest demi-bastion was pointed by 30 April 1936.<sup>93</sup> Approximately 45 feet of wall and three bays of the musketry gallery in the west half of the counterscarp required demolition and reconstruction in 1950.<sup>94</sup> The back walls of three bays in the east half required minor repairs or rebuilding. (See Figure 31).

#### *West Counterscarp*

The north end of the west counterscarp opposite the southwest demi-bastion was dismantled and reconstructed in conjunction with the west ravelin counterscarp. (See below, West Ravelin Counterscarp). Forty feet of the west counterscarp were scheduled for demolition in 1932. (See Figure 33).

Thirty-five additional feet were dismantled at some time, for the Halifax Defence Complex as founds record 75 feet of reconstruction.<sup>95</sup> The counterscarp was reconstructed in ironstone with a concrete coping. The present musketry gallery has an ironstone back wall which may be original, a concrete arch, and a concrete front wall.

It is possible that the section of the west counterscarp which remained standing was pointed at the end of the Unemployment Relief Project. Both counterscarps of the demi-bastion had been scheduled for pointing and LaFleche indicated in 1936 that this work had been completed.<sup>96</sup> The west counterscarp may have been pointed during May and June of 1936. The counterscarp pointing was proceeding in a clockwise direction and had reached the south corner of the west counterscarp by the end of April, 1936.<sup>97</sup>

Approximately 170 feet of the west counterscarp needed repairs by 1950.<sup>98</sup> (See Figure 31). Demolition and reconstruction were recommended for two sections of wall, which were both about 17 feet long. Minor repairs or rebuilding were needed for two other sections with approximate lengths of 75 feet and 61 feet. The coping stones at the corner shared by the demi-bastion's two counterscarp walls were missing.

### *Drain*

The Unemployment Relief Project worked on the drain at the corner of the west and south counterscarps of the demi-bastion.<sup>99</sup> Bad weather conditions forced them to abandon their efforts, however, and the drain remained blocked.

### West Ravelin

The north and south counterscarps of the west ravelin were in dangerous condition in 1932.<sup>100</sup> The Unemployment Relief crew was put to work on them immediately. The first plan was to take the walls down to their foundations. Two weeks later the overall plan for the Citadel was modified to allow for partial demolition. The dismantling of the ravelin counterscarp proceeded according to the revised plan.

*South Counterscarp*

The south counterscarp was not dismantled to the same degree as the ravelin's north counterscarp. The work of the Unemployment Relief Project seems to have closely followed the section drawn on the Project's plans. (See Figure 34). In 1936 the wall was intact to a level above the musketry tunnel.<sup>101</sup> At least one loophole remained. The corner of the ravelin counterscarp with the counterscarp of the southwest demi-bastion had collapsed.

The reconstruction work done in 1938-40 removed what was left of the gallery arch.<sup>102</sup> The arch was reconstructed in poured concrete and waterproofed with two coats of Ferrotile #600. The report for the first week of September 1939 stated that tar and gravel, as well as Ferrotile, were put on 37 linear feet of the reconstructed arch. The reconstructed counterscarp and musketry gallery can be seen clearly in photos taken for the report to the Massey Commission. (See Figures 37 and 38).

It seems that the only new granite surrounds supplied were for a new entrance to the gallery - 12 quoin stones and a lintel. This reconstruction was not as accurate as that done later on the other counterscarp; the new counterscarp had a door in the east section of the wall and thirteen loopholes while the original wall, as shown on an 1847 plan, had 16 openings.<sup>103</sup>

The back wall of the gallery appears to have survived both reconstruction efforts. This wall was probably the one which was reported to have been braced and protected against possible damage in January 1939.<sup>104</sup>

The counterscarp was dismantled further in 1938-40 and reconstructed with poured concrete, faced with ironstone.<sup>105</sup> Stones from the wall were reused. Bricks from the dismantled parapet wall of the Cavalier were moved to the ditch for use in reconstruction. The granite retaining walls banking sections of the perimeter road were dismantled so that the stones could be used in the reconstruction.

*Curve*

The curve of the counterscarp opposite the salient angle of the west ravelin remained standing during the Canadian period. The 1932 plan shows that 160 feet of both the north and south counterscarps were to be taken down, but does not include the curve in the work proposal. (See Figure 33).



Minor rebuilding or repairs were needed at the north section of the curve in 1950; a blocked loophole in this section appears on the As-found.<sup>106</sup>

### *North Counterscarp*

A section on the plans accompanying the Relief Project's progress reports indicates that the north counterscarp of the ravelin was to be dismantled to the top of the musketry gallery, the stones piled at the foot of the wall and a bank formed with the excavated earth from the wall. (See Figure 34). In actual fact, the arch of the musketry gallery was collapsed and the gallery filled with earth for most of the length of the wall. Thirty-five feet of tunnel and four loopholes were left intact at the west end of the wall.<sup>107</sup>

The dismantling of the counterscarp left a great gap on the west front which threatened the security of the Citadel for many years. The ruins of the north counterscarp still remained a low, banked stone wall in 1950 when the Massey engineers examined the Citadel. Although a fence had been erected beside the perimeter road to prevent public access, a well-worn path ran down the slope. (See Figure 39).

When the counterscarp and musketry gallery were reconstructed after the Massey Commission, 115 feet of arch were rebuilt with concrete and the front and back walls of the gallery were coursed ironstone.<sup>108</sup> By 1950 the remains of the back wall had been braced to prevent further collapse, and the base of the front wall appeared stable. (See Figure 40). The reconstructed counterscarp had 16 loopholes, the same number built in the original wall.

### *Drain*

In their efforts to reactivate the drainage system in the ditch the Unemployment Relief crew cleared and repaired the drain at the salient angle of the west ravelin.<sup>109</sup> At the other end, where the drain opened on the glacis, a trench was excavated to a 17 to 18 foot depth and 51 feet of the old wooden drain were renewed with tile. Modern repairs found in a section of the drain excavated by an archaeologist in 1967 may have been made at this time.<sup>110</sup>

## Northwest Demi-bastion

### *West Counterscarp*

The south section of the west counterscarp opposite the northwest demi-bastion was dismantled along with the west ravelin counterscarp. Forty feet, running north from the west ravelin corner, were to be taken down.<sup>111</sup> A cross-section on the 1932 plan proposed that the counterscarp and the musketry gallery be dismantled completely and the earth behind excavated to form a natural slope.

The demolition of the south section was not as complete as originally proposed. The stones were removed from the top half of the wall, piled in the ditch and then banked to form a slope with the area excavated behind the wall. The front and rear walls of the musketry gallery remained relatively intact. (See Figure 39). In the post-1950 reconstruction, the musketry gallery retained its ironstone front and back walls while 35 feet of arch were built in concrete.<sup>112</sup>

In 1934 the section of the west counterscarp which remained standing and the demi-bastion's north counterscarp were scheduled for partial dismantling and rebuilding.<sup>113</sup> The work was not pressing, and ranked 14th in a list of 16 priorities. The progress report plan for November of 1935 showed work on slightly more than two thirds of the wall, although this is not reflected in later plans.<sup>114</sup> By May of 1936, 473 square yards of demi-bastion counterscarp had been pointed or rebuilt.<sup>115</sup> Since no work was ever shown on the north counterscarp, it is assumed that the work was on the west counterscarp. In 1936 LaFleche stated that partial dismantling and rebuilding were required for the demi-bastion counterscarps.<sup>116</sup>

By 1950 the condition of the west wall was infinitely better than that of the north wall. The only work identified for the extant section of west counterscarp in 1950 was minor repairs or rebuilding in the 20 feet of wall adjacent to the dismantled section at the south end. Reconstruction was recommended for the dismantled section. (See Figure 31).

### *North Counterscarp*

The north counterscarp of the northwest demi-bastion was in deplorable state during the Canadian period. Partial dismantling and rebuilding were

included in the schedule of work in 1934 but ranked 14th in the list of 16 priorities.<sup>117</sup>

The need to rebuild part of the wall and to point the remainder was reiterated in 1936.<sup>118</sup> Sections of the wall were cracked and out of plumb. In 1947 the west half of the wall was described as "intact at present; but appears likely to collapse".<sup>119</sup> This state is readily apparent in the report to the Massey Commission.<sup>120</sup> Sixty feet at the west end of the wall were identified for demolition and replacement in 1950.

No appreciable amount of work was done on the north counterscarp during the Unemployment Relief Project. The plan accompanying the progress report for November of 1935 showed that they were working on the east half of the wall.<sup>121</sup> This information is not repeated on later plans showing work in progress and completed.

#### North Ravelin

It is questionable if any work was done on the counterscarp opposite the north ravelin during the Unemployment Relief Project. Repair requirements were identified and the suggestion was made that work be carried out concurrently with work on the ravelin.<sup>122</sup> However, the monthly progress reports and accompanying plans do not include work on the counterscarp, with the exception of the report of May 1936.<sup>123</sup> This report states that a total of 5 square yards had been rebuilt and pointed prior to 1 May and that no additional work had been done during the month. The project terminated two weeks later. Although the LaFleche report on the Project stated that the counterscarp opposite the north ravelin had been completely pointed,<sup>124</sup> it seems that this, in fact, was not the case.

This section of counterscarp was in relatively good shape in 1950. No work was required.

#### Northeast Salient

##### *North Counterscarp*

The need for reconstruction work on the north counterscarp of the northeast salient was identified in 1934, 1936 and 1937. Work on the south end of

the wall was completed by the end of February, 1936.<sup>125</sup> It must have been of a temporary nature, however, because in July of the same year, LaFleche stated that the two counterscarps of the salient were in "poor condition with portions liable to collapse".<sup>126</sup> The north counterscarp apparently was worse than the east, for Sparks dealt with only the former.<sup>127</sup> He agreed that the wall was in very poor condition and called for reconstruction of part and pointing of the remainder.

Work may have been done sometime between 1937 and 1950. The condition of the wall had improved by 1950; the only need identified for the north counterscarp was minor rebuilding or repair at the east end. (See Figure 31). No evidence is presently available to suggest when or if the wall received major repairs.

#### *East Counterscarp*

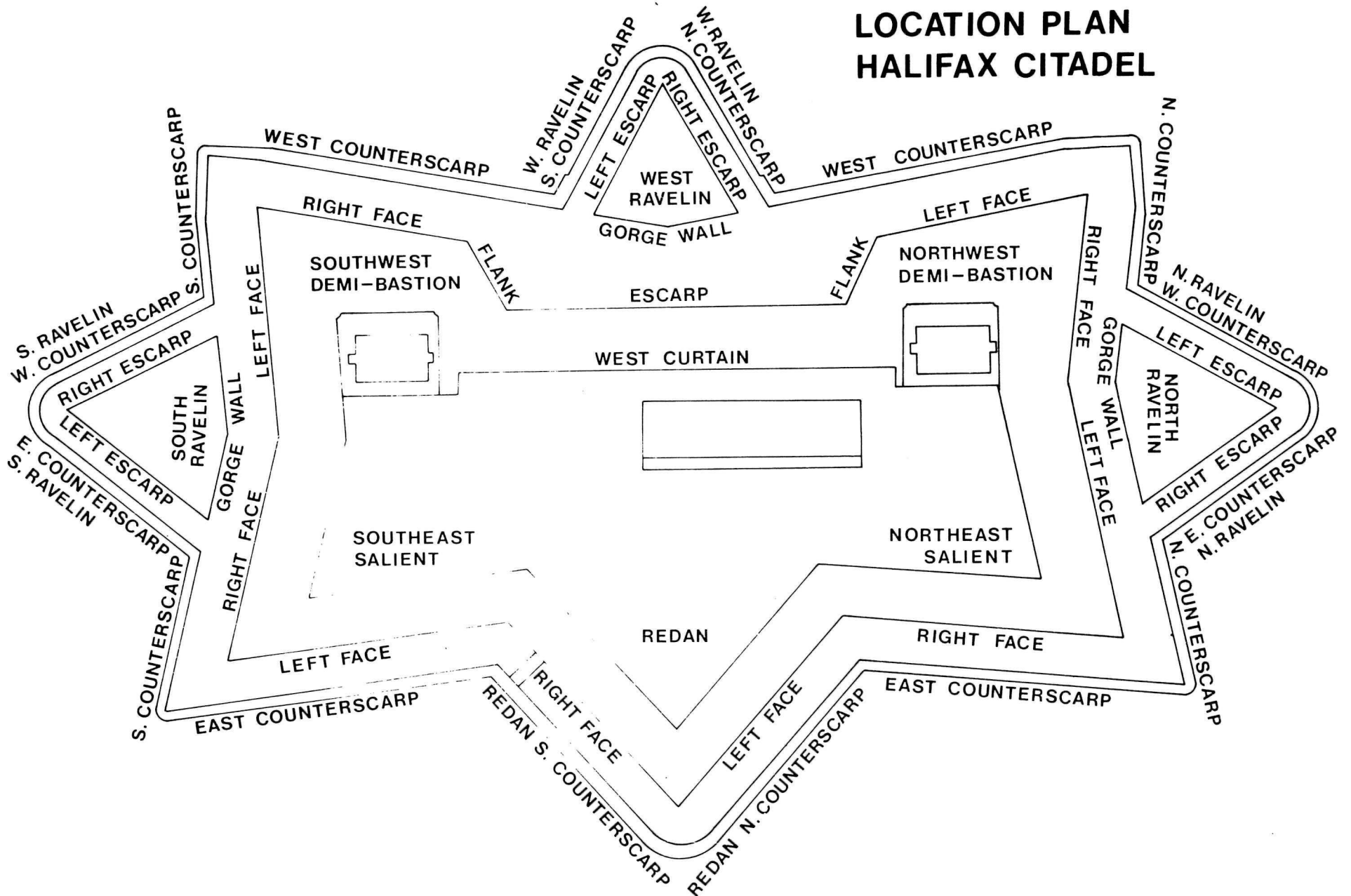
The east counterscarp of the northeast salient needed partial dismantling and rebuilding in 1934. (See Figure 29). Work on the wall was completed in the fall of 1935.<sup>128</sup> In July of 1936 the two counterscarps of the salient were said to need repairs and rebuilding.<sup>129</sup> Later reports in 1936 and in 1937 dealt with the poor condition of only the north counterscarp, suggesting that the east counterscarp was in good condition.<sup>130</sup> There were no problems with the wall in 1950.

#### Redan

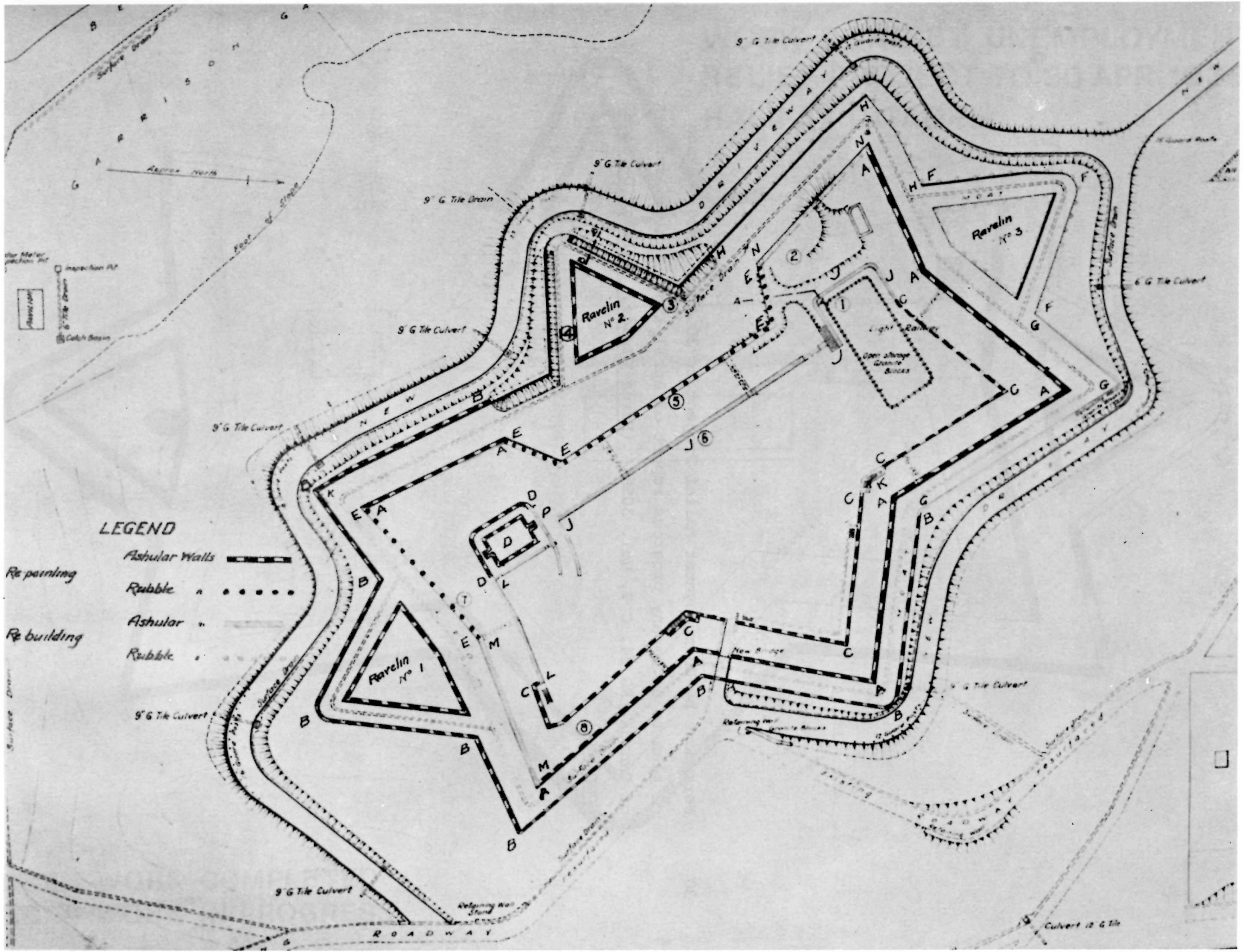
The two counterscarp walls of the redan were pointed during the Unemployment Relief Project. A small section of the south wall, from the southeast salient counterscarp to the gate, was completed by March of 1935.<sup>131</sup> The north wall and the remainder of the south wall were completed by November of 1935.<sup>132</sup> No further record of work on the redan counterscarp had been found for the Canadian period.

28 Location Plan, with names of Citadel walls. (Parks Canada.  
Halifax Defence Complex.)

# LOCATION PLAN HALIFAX CITADEL



- 29      Schedule of priority of work drawn up for the Unemployment Relief  
Project in 1934. (Public Archives of Canada, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052.)



**LEGEND**

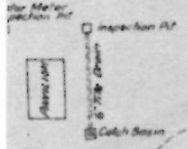
- Re-painting      Ashlar Walls
- Rubble      "
- Re-building      Ashlar      "
- Rubble      "
- 9\"/>

Ravelin No. 2

Ravelin No. 3

Ravelin No. 1

Direction North



Surface Drain

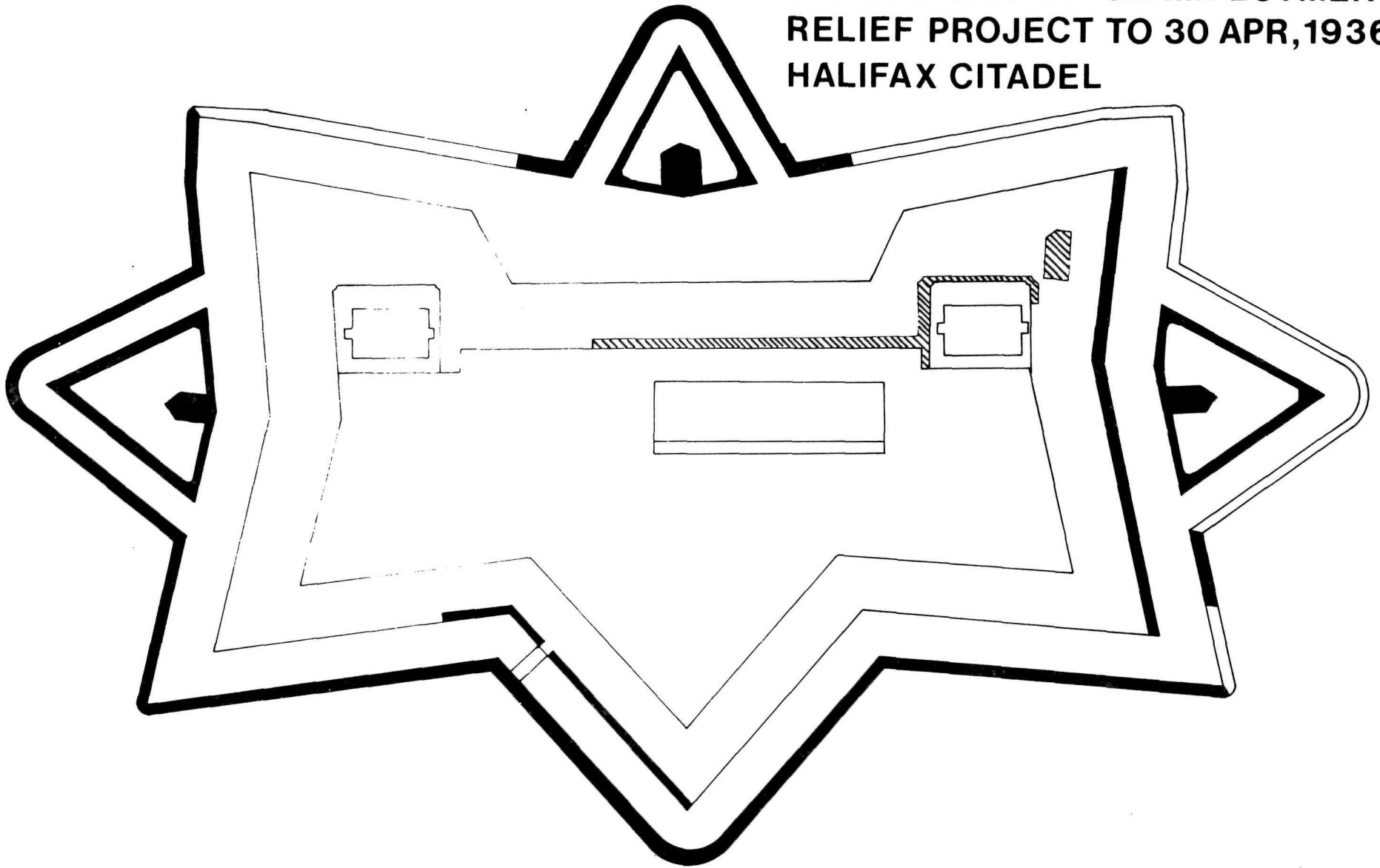
ROADWAY

Culvert 12 G.T.



30 Work done by Unemployment Relief Project to 30 April 1936. Based on plan to accompany progress report of April 1936, Public Archives of Canada, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056. (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)

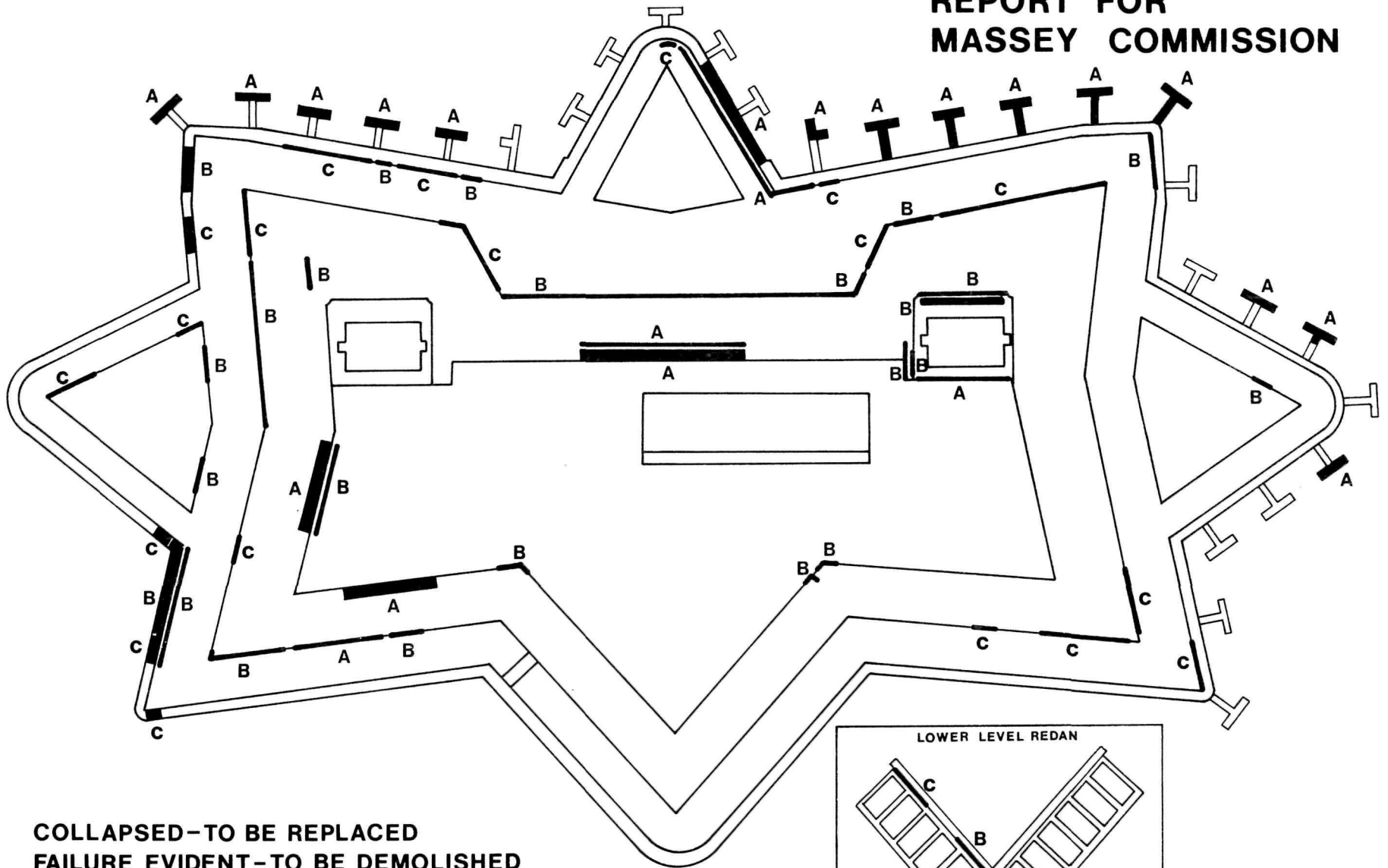
WORK DONE BY UNEMPLOYMENT  
RELIEF PROJECT TO 30 APR, 1936  
HALIFAX CITADEL



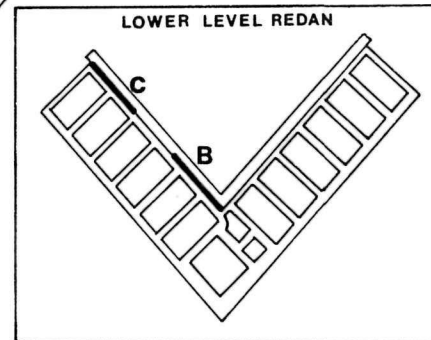
**WORK COMPLETED**  
**WORK IN PROGRESS**

- 31 Work required on the Citadel walls in 1950. Drawn from Appendix E, of the "Report on Restoration of The Halifax Citadel (Fort George)" which was submitted to the Massey Commission in October of 1950. (Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex.)

# REPORT FOR MASSEY COMMISSION



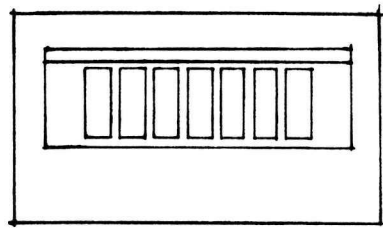
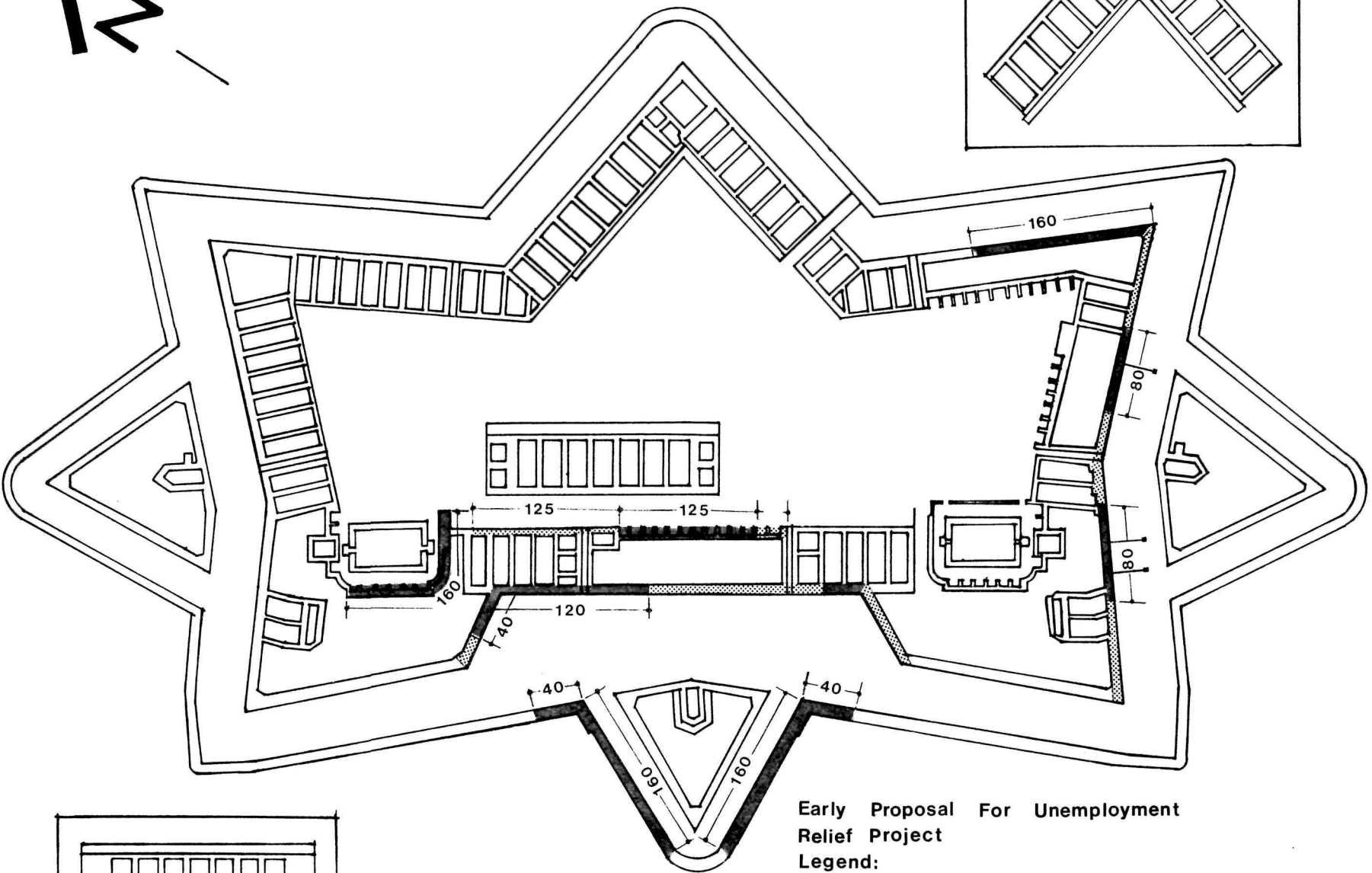
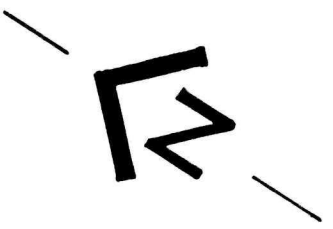
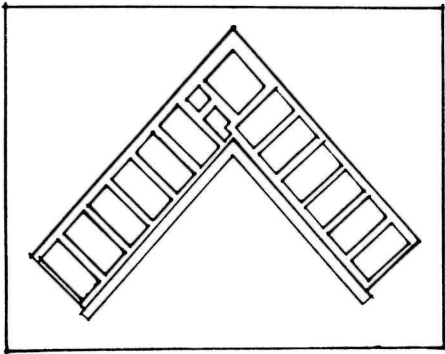
- A COLLAPSED—TO BE REPLACED
- B FAILURE EVIDENT—TO BE DEMOLISHED  
& REPLACED
- C MASONRY - MINOR REBUILDING  
OR REPAIR



32 Aerial photograph of the Citadel taken by the Department of National Defence, 7 September 1923. (Public Archives of Canada, C - 8080)





- 33 Plan accompanying Constantine's early proposal for work to be carried out by the Unemployment Relief Project, 1932. (Public Archives of Canada, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052) Redrawn by Halifax Defence Complex.



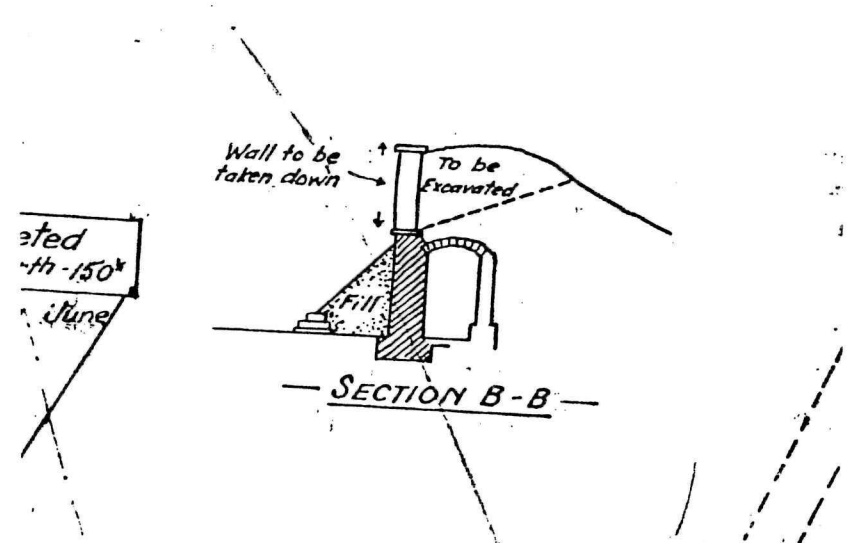
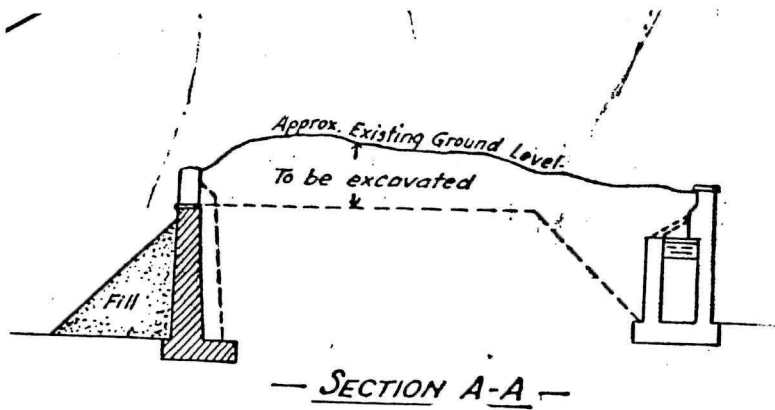
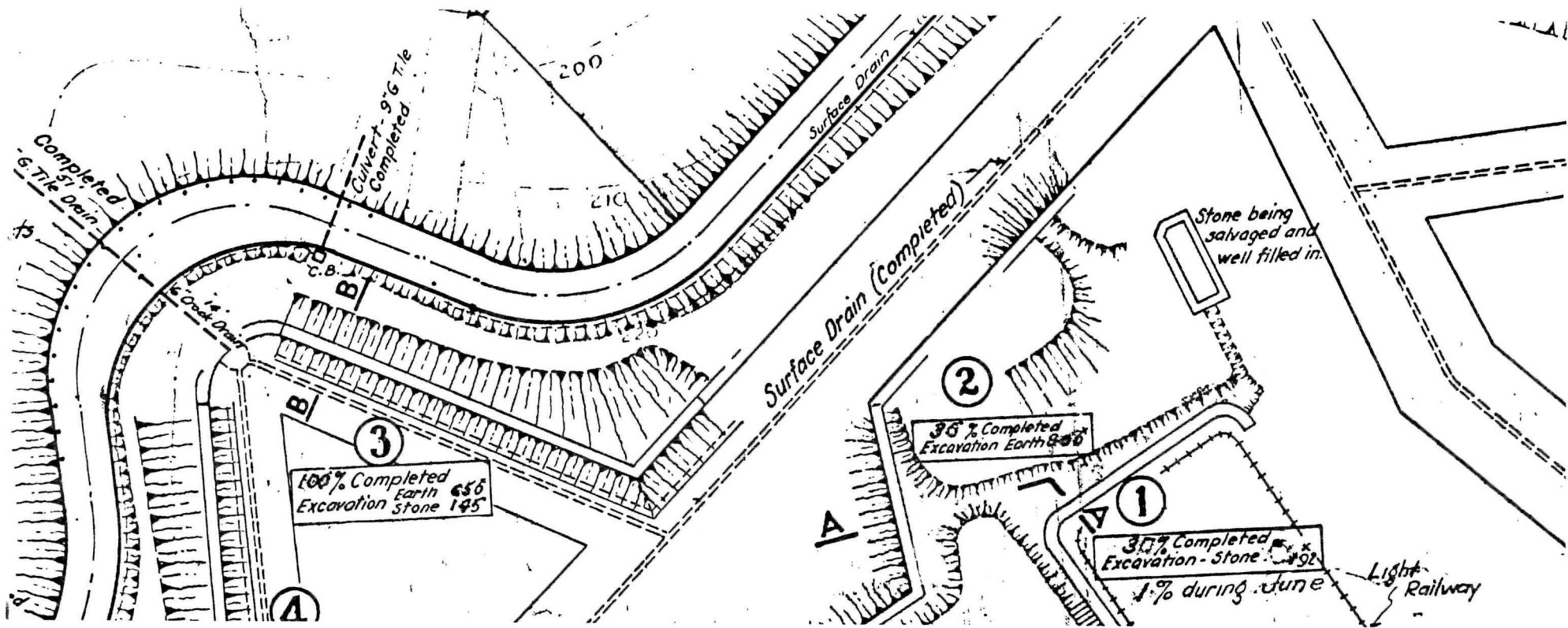
**Early Proposal For Unemployment Relief Project**

**Legend:**

-  Walls to be taken down to the foundation
-  Walls to be partially dismantled



34 Part of plan to accompany Unemployment Relief Project progress report, 30 June 1933. Section A-A shows the work proposed on the northwest demi-bastion and Section B-B the work proposed on the west ravelin counterscarp. (Public Archives of Canada, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053.)



- 35 Photo of the west front taken from the terreplein of the southwest demi-bastion in 1950. Notice the quonset hut on the west curtain and the section of dismantled retaining wall. A mast belonging to the Maritime Broadcasting Company is seen on the northwest demi-bastion. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 20, HS - 12479)

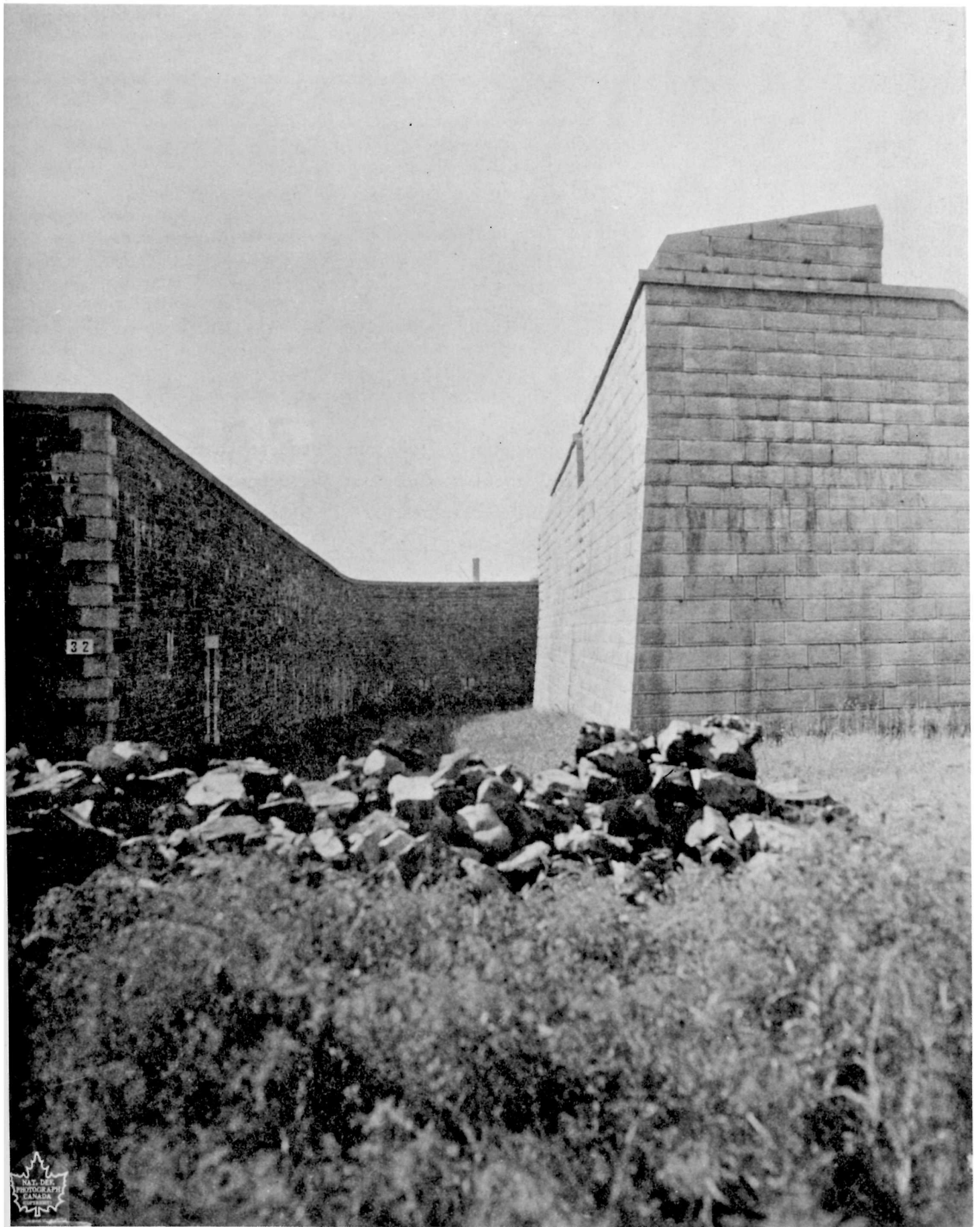


36 Close-up of the dismantled retaining wall of the west curtain, 1950. The restoration work of the Unemployment Relief Project is seen in demi-casemates 37 to 41. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 8, HS - 12493)



37 South counterscarp of the west ravelin, built during the second restoration project, 1938-40. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 32, 1950, HS - 12463)





32

NAT. DEPT.  
PHOTOGRAPHY  
CANADA



38 Photo of the musketry gallery in the reconstructed south counterscarp of the west ravelin, looking west from the corner with the southwest demi-bastion counterscarp, 1950. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 55, HS - 12454).



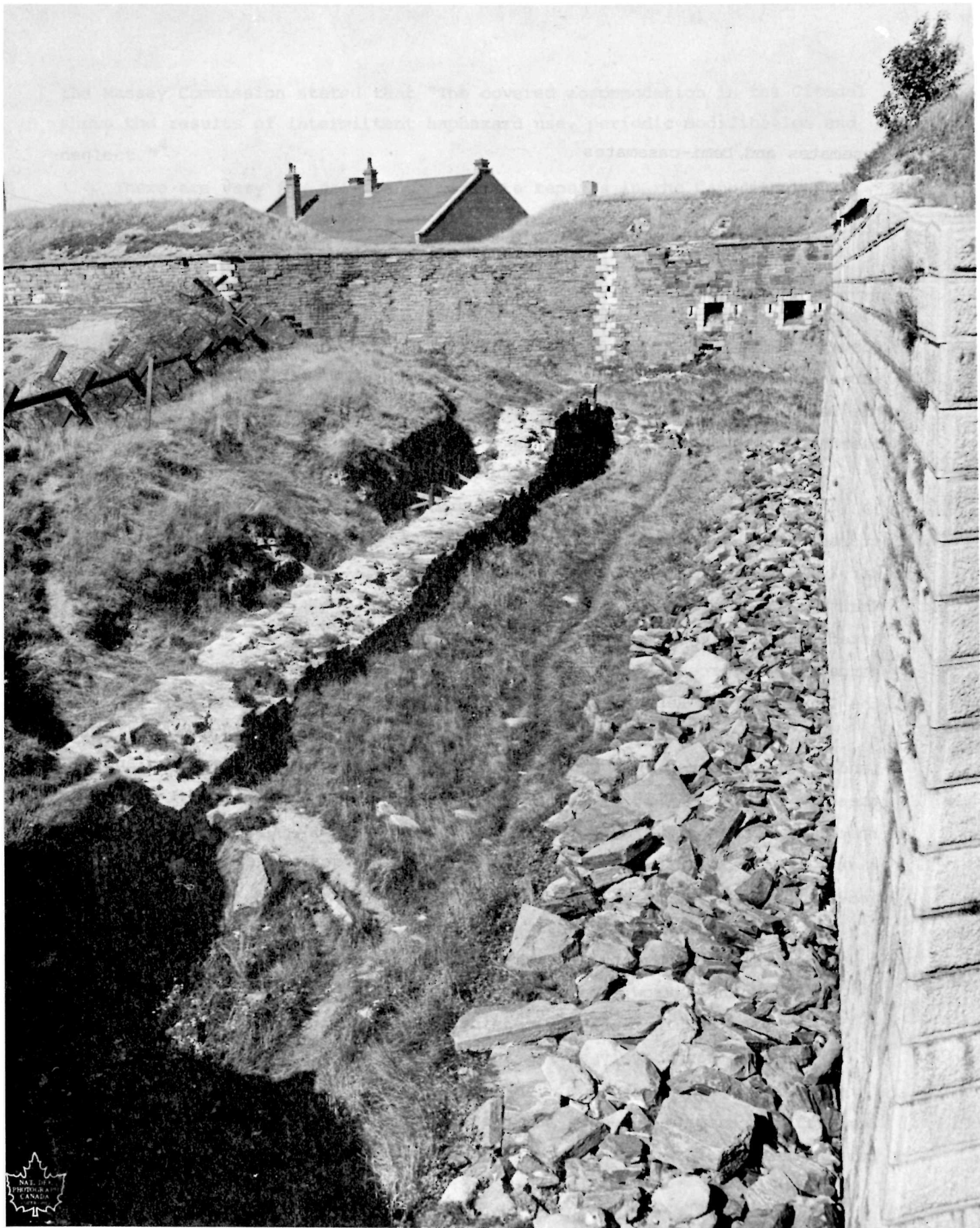
39 Dismantled counterscarp on the west front, showing the corner of the north counterscarp of the west ravelin and the west counterscarp of the northwest demi-bastion, 1950. The Unemployment Relief Project's practice of dismantling the top of the wall and piling the stones to form a bank at the bottom of the wall is seen in the photograph. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 27, HS - 12470).



NAT. DEP.  
PHOTOGRAPH  
CANADA  
GOVERNMENT

40 Photo taken from the salient angle of the west ravelin, showing the bad condition of a section of the escarp on the west front and the remains of a section of counterscarp dismantled by the Unemployment Relief Project. (Public Archives of Canada. Massey Photo No. 40, 1950, HS - 12496).





## Casemates and Demi-casemates

### Casemates

There are 61 casemates within the walls of the Citadel - five in the Southeast Salient, five in the Southwest Demi-bastion, 12 in the West Curtain, three in the Northwest Demi-bastion, 19 in the Northeast Salient and 17 in the Redan. Thirteen of the Redan casemates are two-storey casemates with basement and groundfloor levels and with an area in front.

During the occupation of the Citadel by the Canadian army, 1906 to 1931 and 1940 to 1946, the casemates served as barracks, shops, offices and stores.<sup>1</sup> Eight casemates were part of the prisoner-of-war camp during World War I while nineteen were part of the unemployment relief camp in the 1930s. When the transfer of the Citadel was under negotiation, the army was interested in retaining some of the casemates for the use of the permanent and nonpermanent forces. All of the casemates were included in the transfer to the Department of Resources and Development in 1951.

Accommodation in the casemates was less than ideal. The Military Lands Board reported on the condition of the casemates, the Cavalier and the Brick Block in 1915:

The brick building gives fairly good accommodation for 3 non-commissioned officers and 102 men, but the rest have to live and the work has to be done in what are more like cells in a mediaeval gaol than modern barracks rooms and military offices. The casemates are roomy, but the arched ceilings are low, the thick stone walls and narrow window openings shut out the daylight, ventilation is obtained only by opening doors and windows, and a stove in each room barely serves to warm it, not to dispel the prevalent dampness and gloom.<sup>2</sup>

Some of the casemates used by the unemployment relief camp had to be vacated during the summer months because of dampness.<sup>3</sup> The engineer's report to

the Massey Commission stated that "The covered accommodation in the Citadel shows the results of intermittent haphazard use, periodic modification and neglect."<sup>4</sup>

There are very few details on casemate repairs in the Canadian period. In 1939 four windows were replaced in a casemate used for an office and storeroom by the second restoration project.<sup>5</sup> In 1942 two casemates were renovated for the installation of artillery fire control equipment which was to be used for training purposes -- the walls and ceilings were covered with roofing paper, floors and windows were repaired and heating and lighting were installed.<sup>6</sup>

The casemates are discussed below by component, starting with the Southeast Salient and proceeding in a clockwise direction to the Redan. The numbers correspond to the system of the Halifax Defence Complex Restoration Project, with a number assigned to each and a "B" added to the basement of the two-storey casemates in the Redan. (See Figure 41). In all cases, the wall facing the parade is considered to be the back wall. A table of casemate use during the Canadian period is given at the end of the chapter.

#### Southeast Salient, Casemates 0-4

##### *Casemate 0*

A masonry partition created a front passage and a large back room in casemate 0. There were no exterior openings in the casemate; access was through a door from casemate 1 into the passage. In 1908, as in 1891,<sup>7</sup> a table or other piece of furniture stood against the masonry partition in the corridor. Casemate 0 was a cartridge store in 1908 and an oil store in 1922 and 1924.

##### *Casemate 1*

Casemate 1 was a Royal Artillery Store in 1906 and 1908. In 1908 there was furniture along the front and pier walls. The casemate seems to have been divided, although the line shown on the plans may not be a partition, since there is no opening for a door. In 1922 and 1924 the casemate was a



paint store and the furnishings had been removed.

Two windows and a door were located in the retaining wall.<sup>8</sup> As with many pairs of windows in the Citadel retaining walls, one wide opening was cut through the masonry and a masonry post left between the two windows on the outside wall.

#### *Casemate 2*

Casemate 2 had been constructed as a defence casemate, with three openings in the rear wall. In 1906 and 1908 it was a bread and meat store. The 1908 and 1922 plans show one window and door in the front wall. The accuracy of this is questionable, however, since an earlier and later photograph show the present-day situation of two windows and one door.<sup>9</sup>

#### *Casemate 3*

Casemate 3 was a store in 1906. By 1908 the signal staff was living in C3 and C4, using C3 as a living room and a dining room. In 1922 and 1924, C3 was a coal store.

The casemates no longer resembled a defence casemate by 1908. The openings in the rear wall had been replaced by one large window. A partition with a central doorway and two windows divided the casemate - the living room was at the back and the dining room was at the front.

There were two doors in the masonry walls; one lead to C4 and the other to demi-casemate 12. The only opening in the front wall was a window. Sometime between 1928 and the present day the window was replaced by a door.<sup>10</sup>

#### *Casemate 4*

Eight men of the signal staff were quartered in casemate 4 in 1908. The signal staff probably was living in 1906, when the casemate was described simply as "Barrack Room". By 1922 there were two small rooms at the back of the casemate, one of which was labelled "signal switch".

The gunports of the defence casemate had been converted to a large window by 1908. The surround was cutstone, with eight stones per side.<sup>11</sup>

A photograph in the late 1920s or early 1930s shows a pipe coming out of the window and extending to the top of the escarp. In 1908 and 1922 there were two small windows and a center door in the front wall.

Southwest Demi-bastion, Casemates 5, 6, 6A, 52, 53.

#### *Casemate 5*

There was a variety of uses for casemate 5. It was a store in 1906 and a woodshed in 1922 and 1924. The two plans describe it as "condemned"<sup>12</sup> and as the Quartermaster's Office. The caption of a 1928 photograph labels it "court martial room".<sup>13</sup> The Department of National Defence was still using the casemate in 1936 and planned to retain it.<sup>14</sup>

The casemate had two windows and a door in the front wall and one opening in the rear wall.<sup>15</sup> Incidental repairs were recommended for C5 in 1950.<sup>16</sup>

#### *Casemate 6*

Casemate 6 was described as an engine house in 1906 and 1908, Quartermaster's Stores in 1908 and 1928,<sup>17</sup> and fire hose storage in 1922 and 1924. There was a window in the rear wall and a wide door and window in the front wall. By 1950 two windows filled the front window opening.<sup>18</sup> Incidental repairs were recommended for C6 in 1950.<sup>19</sup>

#### *Casemate 6A*

The only post - 1906 information on the former shifting room of the south magazine is that it was a furnace room in 1943.<sup>20</sup> Sections and a floor plan of the casemate are given on the 1943 plan. A length of pipe projects above the dwarf wall of the demi-bastion in a photo taken in 1950.<sup>21</sup>

#### *Casemate 51*

Casemate 51 was used as garrison cells in 1907 and 1908. In 1908 and 1922 there were three openings in the back wall, dating back to the original

design as a defence casemate. Two windows and a central door were located in the front wall. Partitions divided the rear into what were probably two cells. C51 required incidental repairs in 1950.<sup>22</sup>

#### *Casemate 52*

Casemate 52 was used as garrison cells in 1907 and 1908. There seem to have been two cells at the back of the casemate in 1908 and 1922. Access to the casemate was from C51, through an opening in the common masonry wall. There were three windows in the north wall and three openings in the south wall. C52 required incidental repairs in 1950.

West Curtain, Casemates 7-14, 53-56.

#### *Casemate 7*

Casemate 7 was described as a store in 1906, 1922, and 1924 and as an Royal Artillery store in 1908. During the Unemployment Relief Project, it was used as one of three shops - carpenter, blacksmith or plumber.<sup>23</sup>

The structural features of the casemate seem to have remained the same during the Canadian period. There were two windows and a door in the front wall in 1908, 1922 and 1950.<sup>24</sup>

#### *Casemate 8*

Casemate 8 was used for storage while the Canadian troops occupied the Citadel. It was described as a "store" in 1906, 1922 and 1924 and as "R. A. Store" in 1908. One of the three work shops was located here during the Unemployment Relief Project. (See Figure 5). There were two windows and a door in the front wall in 1908, 1922, and 1950.<sup>25</sup>

#### *Casemate 9*

Casemate 9 was described as a latrine between 1906 and 1924. The 1908 stalls were located on the south wall, urinals on the north wall and a water tank on the west wall. Like casemates 7 and 8, the casemate was a shop during

the Unemployment Relief Project. The 1908 plan shows the three openings original to the defence casemate in the back wall and two windows and a door in the front wall. The openings remained the same in 1950.<sup>26</sup>

#### *Casemate 10*

In 1906 and possibly in 1908 there was a shoemaker's shop in casemate 10. A partition divided the casemate and the front part was described as a barber's shop in 1908.

The openings were the same as those in C9. From 1908, the date of the earliest detailed plan for the period, to 1950 there were two windows and a door in the front wall and three openings in the back wall.

#### *Casemate 53*

The 1922 plan shows the casemate the same as it was on the 1891 plan.<sup>27</sup> A brick partition with a lantern window formed a passage at the front of the casemate. Entrance was gained through sallyport 3. The only known use during the Canadian period was as a cartridge store in 1908.

#### *Casemate 54*

It seems that casemate 54 was vacant in 1908, 1922 and 1924. There were three windows in the front wall and a vent into the sallyport through the pier wall. The only entrance was a door in the wall shared with demi-casemate 41 which was blocked in 1908 and 1922. Part of the vault was exposed by the Unemployment Relief Project and remained visible in 1936 and 1950.<sup>28</sup> (See Figure 36).

#### *Casemate 55*

The plans do not supply a use for casemate 55 in the Canadian period. The openings were the same on the 1891 and 1922 plans - two doors and a window in the retaining wall. There was a vent in the wall shared with the sallyport, opposite the vent in casemate 54.

*Casemate 56*

Casemate 56 was a cartridge store in 1908, with the same layout as in 1891<sup>29</sup> - a masonry partition with a lantern window divided it into a passage and a store. The casemate remained the same in 1922 and 1924.

*Casemates 11, 12, and 13.*

Coal was stored in casemates 11, 12, and 13 in 1906, 1908, 1922 and 1924. The openings in the front wall seem to have been changed to accommodate this use. In 1891 each casemate had two windows and a door.<sup>30</sup> By 1908 openings had been blocked and removed, and there was one wide door in each casemate. In casemate 11 the south window had been blocked, the next window removed and the door widened. In casemates 12 and 13 the door had been blocked and the two windows replaced by a door. Doors in the pier walls connected the three casemates. The openings in the back wall remained the same.

In 1950 wooden flashing over the doors of the three casemates covered tracks for sliding doors.<sup>31</sup> There was a frame on the north side of the doors of casemates 12 and 13 and probably also on casemate 11. It is likely that the flashings were constructed when the openings were changed. One corner of the flashing and frame of casemate 13 appears in photographs taken during World War I. (See Figures 3 and 4).

The Department of National Defence wanted to retain casemates 11, 12 and 13 in transfer negotiations with the Department of Mines and Resources in 1947.<sup>32</sup> In 1950 the three casemates required incidental repairs.<sup>33</sup>

*Casemate 14*

Casemate 14 was a latrine in 1906, 1908, circa 1910, 1922 and 1924.<sup>34</sup> The set-up in 1908 was the same as that in casemate 9 - stalls on the south wall, urinals on the north wall and a tank on the west wall. The openings remained the same throughout the period - two windows and a door in the front wall.<sup>35</sup> The casemate required incidental repairs in 1950.

Northwest Demi-bastion, Casemates 57, 58, 15A.

*Casemates 57, 58*

Casemates 57 and 58, like casemates 51 and 52, were garrison cells in 1907. While C51 and C52 continued to be described as such in 1908, no use was given for C57 and C58. By 1908 the masonry partition seen on the 1891 plan had been removed. A doorway between the two casemates was created by the removal of the partition. The exterior openings were the same in 1891, 1908 and 1922. Both casemates had two windows and a central door in the south wall and three openings in the north wall.

The stairwell leading to the casemates was dismantled and filled in during the Unemployment Relief Project, effectively blocking the two former defence casemates which remained inaccessible for the rest of the Canadian period. In 1950 the engineers examining the Citadel for the Massey Commission viewed the casemates through the **embrasures** in the escarp and reported that the casemates seemed to be "in a fair state of preservation".<sup>36</sup>

*Casemate 15A*

The plans indicate that C15A, the former shifting room of the north magazine, was vacant throughout the Canadian period. The structural details had not changed between 1891 and 1922. A window and a door were located on the south wall.

Northeast Salient, Casemates 15-33

*Casemates 15-22*

Casemates 15 to 22 were similar in appearance and, to some extent, in function during the Canadian period. There were two windows and a door in the front wall of each casemate and two windows in the rear wall. By 1922, a vestibule was located at the door of each of the eight casemates. From 1906 to 1908 they were used as soldiers' barracks.

Casemates 18 to 25 were part of the prisoner-of-war camp and, like the Cavalier, were segregated from the rest of the Citadel by a barbed wire enclosure. It seems that the enclosure proposed in 1914 was to extend from sallyport 5 to casemate 25, where the gate was to be located.<sup>37</sup> In May of

1915 there was a proposal to build one large enclosure to encompass both compounds.

As far as extending the Compound in front of Cavalier Block goes, I understand it is the intention to throw the Cavalier and Casemate Compounds into one, leaving a wide driveway, giving access to the Sergeants Mess, thence South [west ?] along the front of the Casemates to the roadway back of Cavalier Block...<sup>38</sup>  
An enlarged enclosure appears on the plan drawn in February of 1916.<sup>39</sup>

The north section of the salient was defined as soldiers' quarters on the 1916 plan, suggesting that the prisoners may have been moved to the Cavalier. Such a move had been discussed in the early months of 1915, when it was proposed to create a cookhouse and dining rooms in C19 to C22 and to open doorways between the casemates.<sup>40</sup> There is no evidence that the proposal was implemented.

#### *Casemate 15*

Soldiers were quartered in C15 in 1906, 1907 and possibly 1916. The 1908 plans described the casemate as the N.C.O.s' recreation room and/or Junior N.C.O.s' Canteen.<sup>41</sup> The use after 1908 is not known; the casemate appears to have been empty in 1922 and 1924.

When the casemate served as a canteen there was a small room in the northwest corner. Furniture was built along the west, south and east walls of the room and against the outside of the south partition. There was a door and a window in the east partition. The room had been removed by 1922.

In 1922 there was a vestibule inside the door to C15. The partitions in C15 and C16 were lighter than those in C17 to C22. Two windows and a door faced the parade, and two windows overlooked the ditch.

#### *Casemate 16*

Casemate 16 was a soldiers' barrack room in 1906, 1907 and 1908, providing accommodation for 11 men in 1908. It does not seem to have been in use in 1922 and 1924. In circa 1940 it was used as a lecture room.

In 1922 the casemate was identical to its neighbour, C15. There were

two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall. A vestibule similar to the one in C15 was located inside the door.

The window and door arrangement in the retaining wall remained the same in 1950.<sup>42</sup> The windows were sash windows and had four vertical bars.

### *Casemate 17*

Casemate 17 was a barrack room in 1906, 1907 and 1908. Eleven men were quartered there in 1908. In 1922 and 1924 it was a lecture and recreation room for the Royal Canadian Regiment. A pencilled comment on the 1922 plan states that the casemate was not in use, although the notation may have been added later. In circa 1940 the casemate was being utilized once again as a lecture room.

The vestibule at the door of C17 was in place by 1908 and remained in 1922. The openings of the casemate did not change during the Canadian period; there were two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall.<sup>43</sup>

### *Casemate 18*

Casemate 18 was a barrack room from 1906 to 1908, accommodating 11 men in 1908. During World War I the casemate housed prisoners of war. It probably was converted to this use in November of 1914 when two casemates were added to the prisoner-of-war establishment, which then consisted of casemates 20 to 23.<sup>44</sup> The two additional casemates were used by the military as a shoe-makers' and barbers' shop prior to November of 1914. In 1922 and 1924, C18 was an office for A1 Company, Royal Canadian Regiment. In circa 1940 it was a lecture room.

A vestibule was erected at the door of casemate 18 by 1908 and was still in place in 1922. There were two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall. The windows were barred during the prisoner-of-war camp.

The location of the front openings remained the same in 1950 but the bars seem to have been removed.<sup>45</sup>



*Casemate 19*

Soldiers lived in casemate 19 from 1906 to 1908. Quarters were provided for 11 men in 1908. It seems that the casemate was incorporated into the prisoner-of-war establishment in November of 1914, after being used by the army as either a shoemakers' or a barbers' shop.<sup>46</sup> Bars were put on the windows.

Two prisoners from C19 participated in an escape in January of 1915.<sup>47</sup> Plans were made the following month to move all prisoners to the Cavalier and to include C19 in a cookhouse-dining room complex for the Canadian troops. It seems that soldiers were quartered in the casemate by 1916.

In 1922 and 1924 there was a Sergeants' Mess, RCR, in the front of the casemate and a room for single sergeants, RCR, in the back. In 1922, a partition with a center doorway separated the two rooms, and a vestibule, which dated from at least 1908, was located at the door. In circa 1940 the casemate was a lecture room.

The window and door locations in the retaining wall remained the same during the Canadian period. Two windows and one door were located in the front wall. By 1950 the bars had been removed and there were sash windows.<sup>48</sup> There were two windows in the back wall in 1908 and 1922.

*Casemate 20*

Casemate 20 was a soldiers' room in 1906, 1907, and 1908, accommodating 11 men in the latter year. When the prisoner-of-war camp was established in October of 1914, the casemate became a barrack room for the prisoners, and a light was installed over the door and bars were placed at the windows.<sup>49</sup> Three men from C20 escaped through a window in C21 in January of 1915.<sup>50</sup> In the subsequent plan to exchange quarters with the Canadian army in the south end of the Cavalier, C20 was to become part of kitchen-dining room establishment. It seems that soldiers were quartered in the casemate in 1916.

In 1922 and 1924 a shoemaker, RCR, occupied C20. A pencilled note on the 1922 plan adds another occupant - "and barber". Engineers were in the casemate in circa 1940. When transfer of Citadel ownership was being negotiated in 1947, the Department of National Defence wanted to retain C20.<sup>51</sup>

The only partitions in C20 in 1908 and 1922 were for a vestibule at the door. There were windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear.

#### *Casemate 21*

Casemate 21 was a soldiers' barrack room 1906 to 1908. Space was provided for 11 men in 1908. Like C20, C22 and C23, it was part of the prisoner-of-war camp from October of 1914 and had a light over the door and bars at the windows.<sup>52</sup> On 28 January 1915, one of the bars were severed and nine prisoners, including four from C21, escaped into the ditch.<sup>53</sup> In February arrangements were made to house all prisoners in the Cavalier and relocate the kitchen and dining rooms of the Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery and 1st Coastal Artillery in C19 to C22. Soldiers may have been quartered in C21 in 1916.

In 1922 and 1924 the R.C.R. clothing store was located in C21. The vestibule dating from at least 1908, was still at the entrance. In circa 1940 engineers were using C21.

The front wall of C21 had two windows and a door during the Canadian period. In 1922 there were two windows in the rear wall.

#### *Casemate 22*

Casemate 22 was a soldiers' barrack from 1906 to 1908, providing space for 11 men in 1908. A light was placed over the door and bars were placed at the windows when the prisoner-of-war camp was organized.<sup>54</sup> In February of 1915 arrangements were made to move the prisoners and to turn casemates 19 to 22 into a kitchen and dining rooms for the Canadian army. Casemate 22 had been vacated by 5 May, when it was reported that it had been fitted up as a kitchen and dining room for the prison guards.<sup>55</sup> A partition, counter and range had been added at a cost of \$84. Soldiers may have been quartered in C22 in 1916.

Quartermaster's stores, R.C.R., were in C22 in 1922 and 1924. A vestibule at the entrance had been constructed sometime between 1908 and 1922. C22 was a lecture room circa 1940.

The front wall of C22 had two windows and a door during the Canadian period. There were two windows in the rear wall.

### *Casemate 23*

Casemate 23 was an ablution room throughout most of the Canadian period. It served the army in this capacity in 1906, 1907, 1908 and circa 1910.<sup>56</sup> From October 1914, it was the ablution room and bathroom for the prisoners of war detained in several casemates of the northeast salient.<sup>57</sup> In 1922 and 1924 it was described as a wash house. The only other possible use of C23 during the period was as a lecture room in circa 1940.

The interior layout is seen on the 1908 and 1922 plans. In 1908 furniture was located along the pier walls. Partitions in the northwest and northeast corners enclosed two bath areas. In 1922 six washbasins or sinks were located on the west wall. The north end of the casemate had been renovated; there were two small rooms in the northwest corner, four small rooms in the northeast corner and a central corridor. The significance of a dotted rectangle with two diagonals, located just inside the door on the 1908 plan, is not known.

This casemate was the only one in the north section of the salient not to have two windows in the front wall. There was a large window beside the door. There were three openings in the rear wall in 1908 and 1922.

### *Casemate 24*

Casemate 24 was a barrack room from 1906 to 1908, housing 12 men in 1908. During the prisoner-of-war camp it seems to have been a guardroom. In March of 1915 partitions were added to make a room for the officer on duty.<sup>58</sup> The estimate for the renovations, including the installation of a heating stove, was \$78.00. Vegetables were stored in the casemate in 1922 and 1924. In circa 1940 it was a lecture room.

In 1908 and 1922 there were two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall. The openings in the front wall remained the same in 1950.<sup>59</sup>

*Casemate 25*

Casemate 25 was a barrack room from 1906 to 1908, accommodating sergeants in the latter year. At the beginning of the prisoner-of-war camp, C25 was a guard room.<sup>60</sup> By March of 1915 it had been vacated by the prisoner-of-war establishment.<sup>61</sup> As part of the plan to take over the remainder of the Cavalier, the grocery bar was to be moved to C25. Work was stopped, however, before the counter, shelves and groceries were moved from the Cavalier.

The casemate was a butcher shop in 1922 and 1924. In 1922 a piece of furniture, possibly a table, was built against the south wall. There was a lecture room in the casemate circa 1940.

There were two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall in 1908 and 1922.

*Casemates 26, 27, 28, 29.*

Casemates 26 to 29 served as the Sergeants' Mess through most of the Canadian period. The general function of the casemates remained the same from 1906 to 1924. The Mess seems to have operated during World War I, for there was initial concern about its proximity to the prisoners' casemates.<sup>62</sup> When an enlarged barbed wire enclosure was proposed in May of 1915, provision was made for a wide driveway to the Sergeants' Mess which probably was still located in the northeast salient.<sup>63</sup>

The structural details of the four casemates were similar. There were two windows and a door in the front wall of each casemate and a small window in the back. A doorway in each of the three pier walls between C26 and C29 provided interior access within the Mess.

The parade adjacent to C26 and C27 is labelled "platform over" on the 1908 plan. This seems to refer to the wooden platform for the gun emplacement projecting over the rampart, although it is the only one of the platforms which is noted.

The World War II use of the casemates is not clearly defined. The circa 1940 plan places six rather than seven casemates between sallyport 6 and the salient angle.

Casemate 26 was the mess room of the Sergeants' Mess in 1908 and 1913 and the reading room or library in 1921 and 1922.<sup>64</sup> No use was given for the casemate in 1924, suggesting that it was vacant. Circa 1940 it was a lecture room.

A partition, situated east of the door to C27, ran across the casemate. The 1921 plan suggests either that it was not a full partition or that it was partially glazed. There was a door at the south end. When the casemate was a mess room in 1908, the back room was the bar. A vestibule was located at the front entrance in 1908 but had been removed by 1922.

Casemate 27 was a billiard room in 1908, 1913, 1921 and 1922. A platform was situated at the back of the casemate and extended almost to the two side entrances. The platform was in place by 1908, and remained in 1921 and 1922. What obviously was a billiard table was centered in the front of the casemate in 1921. A telephone was located in a vestibule inside the door in 1908 but all traces of the vestibule were gone by 1922. The casemate was a board room in 1924 and a lecture room circa 1940.

Casemate 28 was the dining room of the Sergeants' Mess. In 1908 a partition with a center door was located immediately to the east of the side entrances. The room created at the rear of the casemate had furniture against the rear wall and the partition, to the left of the door. The small room was described as a "cellar" in 1908.

In 1913 a proposal was made to install a washroom in the back room, which was 15 ft. 3 in. wide and 11 ft. 3 in. deep. A toilet, two urinals and a washbasin were proposed for the rear wall. A new drain to the sewer in the ditch was necessary for the new facility.

The ablution room had been added by 1921, when there was a toilet on the north wall, two urinals on the rear wall and a basin on the south wall. A bathtub, enclosed by two partitions, was located in the southwest corner of the room. A partition to the west of the casemate's side entrances created a corridor between the ablution and dining room. What probably was a large table was centered in the dining room.

The casemate does not seem to have been in use in circa 1940.

Casemate 29 was the kitchen for the Sergeants' Mess. A pantry was located at the rear of the casemate, separated from the kitchen by a partition with a center doorway. In 1908 and 1922 a counter or cupboards ran along the south and east walls of the pantry. One range was located in the southeast corner of the kitchen in 1913 and two in 1921. There was a sink in the southwest corner in 1913 and 1921. What seems to be a counter was adjacent to the sink on the south wall in 1921 and possibly in 1922.

#### *Casemate 30*

Casemate 30 was described as part of the Sergeants' Mess in 1906 and 1907. It was the main shell store in 1908 and a cartridge store in 1922 and 1924. It seems to have been either empty or a storeroom in circa 1940.

There were no openings in the front wall of C30. Entrance was through a door into sallyport 6. In 1908 and 1922 there was a lamp recess in the inside front wall and a small window in the back wall.

An outside urinal stood against the retaining wall of C30, on the parade, in 1908. Two small structures with separate entrances extended to the surface drain which ran in front of the retaining wall. There was a screen on the other side of the drain. The urinals dated back to the British period, as seen on the 1891 plans.<sup>65</sup> They had been removed by 1922.

#### *Casemate 31*

Casemate 31 is described consistently as a tailor shop from 1906 to 1924. In 1908 and 1922 there were interior divisions in the casemate. A partition between the front door and window created an undefined space in the northwest corner. It does not seem to have been a room, for no door is shown on the plans, and the line joining the partition and the north wall is lighter than a partition wall.

A room in the northeast corner was used as a store in 1908 and 1922.

There were windows in the west partition and a door in the south partition. A platform, or possibly a table, was built against the outside of the south partition; it is probable that it would have been below the sill-level of the back window.

There were two windows and a door in the front wall and two windows in the back wall in 1908 and 1922. The front wall of the casemate had been removed by 1928. (See Figure 27). Two courses of masonry were left at the base of the wall and the open space above was glazed. The door remained in the same location. The renovation possibly was done to provide the tailors with more light.

One of the administration offices of the Unemployment Relief Project was located in the casemate in 1932 and probably was used until the end of the project in June of 1936. The use given on the circa 1940 plan is blurred, but may read "S/L Ord. Room".

#### *Casemate 32*

Casemate 32 was a shell store in 1906, a Royal Artillery store in 1908 and a cartridge store in 1922 and 1924. When it was a Royal Artillery store there were furnishings on the north, west and south walls. Like C31, it was an administration office during the Unemployment Relief Project. In circa 1940 stores were kept in the casemate.

There were two windows and a door in the front wall throughout the period.<sup>66</sup> In 1908 and 1922 a doorway in the south wall lead to C33.

#### *Casemate 33*

Ammunition was stored in C33; the casemate was described as a shell store in 1906 and as a cartridge store in 1908, 1922, and 1924. In circa 1940 it was referred to simply as "stores".

Like the other cartridge stores, C33 had no exterior openings. A masonry partition with a door and lamp recess created a passage at the front of the casemates. A door in the pier wall shared with C32 provided the only access to the casemate, through the passage.

Redan, Casemates 34-50.

*Casemate 34*

Casemate 34 was a storeroom for most of the Canadian period. It was a company office in 1906, a company store in 1908 and a "R.Q.M."s store in 1922 and 1924. In 1908 and 1922 there were furnishings along the back and side walls and down the center of the casemate. By 1922 a doorway had been cut through to C35.

Fifteen men were lodged in C34 during the Unemployment Relief Project. There was a fortress plotting room in the casemate circa 1940. The military wanted to retain the casemate in the event of a transfer of Citadel ownership in 1947.<sup>67</sup>

There were two windows and a door in the casemate's front wall throughout the period.<sup>68</sup> The three openings of the former defence casemate were still in the back wall in 1922.

*Casemate 35*

Casemate 35 had the same use as C34 in the Canadian period. C35 was a company office in 1906, a company store in 1908 and "R.Q.M."s stores in 1922 and 1924. Furnishings were built on the side and back walls and in the middle of the casemate in 1908 and 1922. By 1922 doorways had been cut through to C34 and C36, both of which also held quartermaster's stores. A piece of furniture, possibly a counter, was adjacent to the door to C36.

Accommodation for 15 men was made available during the Unemployment Relief Project. In circa 1940 the casemate was a fortress plotting room. In transfer negotiations in 1947, the military sought to retain C35.<sup>69</sup>

There were two windows and a door in the front wall of C35.<sup>70</sup> There were three openings in the rear wall in 1922.

*Casemates 36-41*

The two-storey casemates, 36 and 37, 38 and 39, 40 and 41, were three matched pairs in 1908. As a result it is impossible to tell which pair was under consideration in 1910, when it was suggested that Warrant Officers' Quarters



be renovated.<sup>71</sup> It was proposed that the small rear window on the ground floor level of both casemates be enlarged. On the basement level, a door into the ditch was to be added between the back windows in either C36B, C38B or C40B, and a set of exterior steps and a verandah was to be constructed. The plan was not implemented.

## A Block

### *Casemate 36*

Casemate 36, 37 and their basements were known collectively as A Block. The only entrance to the block was a door in the front wall of C36, which opened into "A passage". In 1908 and 1922 two rooms were located to the left of the passage, on entering. Stairs at the back of the passage lead to the basement. There was a door between C36 and C37 and, by 1922, a door between C36 and C35.

In 1908 the front room was an office for "No. 2 company", and the back room accommodated an orderly. The Warrant Officer's quarters may have been located in C36 in 1910. In 1922 and 1924 there were quartermasters' stores in the casemate, with small stores at the back in 1922. During the Unemployment Relief Project, 15 men lived in the casemate. It seems that an orderly was in the front room and Major Murray in the back circa 1940. The military wanted to retain C36 in 1947.<sup>72</sup>

There were two windows and a door in the front wall and a window in the rear wall. The Massey photos show an exterior porch on the bridge over the area; the porch had a window in the south wall and a sloped roof.<sup>73</sup>

There seems to have been a women's privy in front of C36 in 1908. A small section is shown at the top of the area stairs on the 1908 plan, and an even smaller section below is labelled "Women E.C." (Earth Closet).

### *Casemate 36B*

The basement had the same floor plan as the groundfloor (C36) in 1908 and 1922; the door opened into a passage with two rooms to the left and stairs at the end. Stores were kept in the rooms in 1908 and probably also in

1922 and 1924. There were two small windows in the back wall and a window and a door in the front wall in 1908 and 1922.

### *Casemate 37*

Casemate 37 was part of Block A. It had two windows in the front wall and one in the rear wall. The entrance was in the pier wall shared with C36. In 1908 and 1922 partitions across the center of the casemate divided C37 into two major rooms and created a closet area for both rooms, and an entranceway.

In 1908 the office of "No. 1 Company" was in the front of the casemate and an orderly was in the back. The Warrant Officer's quarters may have been in C37 in 1910. In 1922 and 1924 the Quartermaster's Office was in the front and the R.Q.M.'s clerk was in the back.

Fifteen men of the Unemployment Relief Project were quartered in C37. In circa 1940 the casemate seems to have accommodated Major Perron. The army continued to use C37 after World War II and attempted to keep it for future use when the Department of National Defence was discussing the transfer of Citadel ownership.<sup>74</sup>

### *Casemate 37B*

In 1908 the basement of C37 was divided into two rooms of equal size and a small entranceway. There were stores in both rooms. By 1922 the partitions had been removed and the basement held Quartermasters' stores. There were two windows in both the front and back walls.

## B Block

### *Casemate 38*

Casemate 38, 38B, 39, and 39B constituted B Block. The division of C38 was the same as C36 in 1908 and 1922; there were two rooms and a passage, "B passage". In 1908 the front room was the quartermaster's office and the rear room was the quartermaster store. The Warrant Officer's quarters may have been in C38 in 1910. In 1922 and 1924 the office was the Arma-

ment Office and the back room held supplies and files. Stairs to the basement were located at the end of the passage.

During the Unemployment Relief Project the casemate housed 15 men. In circa 1940 the front of the casemate may have been the pay office and part of the back may have been a washroom. The military was using the casemate in the late 1940s and planned to retain it.<sup>75</sup>

Two windows and a door were situated in the front wall and one window in the back wall in 1908 and 1922. There was a door in the pier wall between C38 and C39.

#### *Casemate 38B*

The partitions in C38B were positioned like those in C36B in 1908 and 1922. There were two rooms and a passageway. Stores were held in the rooms in 1908 and probably also in 1922 and 1924. There were two windows in the back wall and a window and door in the front wall. Stairs were located at the end of the passage.

#### *Casemate 39*

Casemate 39 was a mate to C37 in 1908. Partitions in the center of the casemate formed an entranceway and two rooms with anterooms. There were two windows in the front wall and one in the rear wall. The only access to the casemate was through a door in the wall shared with the adjoining casemate, C38.

In 1910 the Warrant Officer's quarters may have been in C39. By 1922, a door had been cut through the pier wall into C40. Doors had also been added to the small partitions which were parallel to the pier walls, thus providing a corridor across the center of the casemate.

The use of C39 in 1922 reflected the close association with C40 and C41; the front room was a central registry and the back was a stationery supply. In 1908 an officer was quartered in the front and a servant in the back.

At the beginning of the Unemployment Relief Project the casemate was recommended as the ablution room for the 120 men quartered in the Redan. (See Figure 5). The plans concentrated on arranging facilities in the base-

ment, however, and said nothing specific about the ground floor.

In circa 1930 officers seem to have been living in most of the casemate. The center corridor remained and there seems to have been a wash-room in the back corner. The military wanted to retain C39 in 1947.

The fenestration of the front wall remained the same in 1908 and 1922. There was central heating in 1922, for a furnace had been installed in the basement at some time between 1908 and 1922.

#### *Casemate 39B*

In 1908 C39B resembled C37B. There were two windows in the front and back walls and a door in the pier wall shared with 38B. Partitions divided C39B into two rooms and an entranceway. Stores were kept in both rooms.

The 1908 partitions remained in 1922 but the use of the basement had changed. There was a furnace in the back room. Two toilets and a bathtub had been installed along the front wall of the other room and partitions had been erected around them.

In 1932 a proposal was made to add 12 washbasins, six baths and five toilets to C39 for the use of the 120 men living in the redan during the Unemployment Relief Project.<sup>76</sup> A jacket heater and hot water cylinders were also proposed. The plan was rejected, saving the Project \$1,200.<sup>77</sup> The men were left with the alternative of either queuing up for the two toilets or crossing the parade to the Cavalier and Brick Block. Camp-type ablution tables with overhead cold water taps were to be installed and extra drains were to be connected under the concrete floor.

#### C Block

##### *Casemate 40*

Casemate 40, 40B, 41 and 41B constituted C Block. In 1908, the floorplan of C40 was the same as C36 in A Block and C38 in B Block. The door opened into "C passage". Stairs were situated at the end of the passage and two rooms were to the left, on entering. Quarters for the Sergeant Major were located in the two rooms. There were two windows and a door in the front wall and one window in the rear wall. The Warrant Officer's quarters may have been in the casemate in 1910.

C40 had been renovated by 1922. The door had been changed to a window and the passage removed. A door had been cut through to C39 and a new passage created by the addition of a second partition, parallel to the one running across the casemate. Two windows in the new partition supplied light for the passage. A clerk's office was located in the front room and a regimental sergeant major's office in the backroom.

In 1924 the "RSM" office was still in the casemate. Fifteen men were accommodated during the Unemployment Relief Project. In circa 1940 officers quarters may have been located in C40. The military wanted to retain the casemate in 1947.

#### *Casemate 40B*

The basic division of C40B was similar to the ground floor, C40, in 1908. There were two rooms, a passage which ran the length of the casemate and a set of stairs. In addition, there was a bathroom in the front half of the front room; an enclosed bath and privy (earth closet) were located along the front wall. The partition between the bath and the earth closet was angled so that the window was in the bath area. The two larger rooms were the sergeant major's quarters.

By 1922 the bath had been removed and the earth closet replaced with a toilet. The only remaining partitions were around the bath and toilet area. It seems that the toilet was no longer there in 1932; the only two toilets in the Redan at that time seem to have been in C39B.<sup>78</sup>

#### *Casemate 41*

Casemate 41 resembled C39 in B Block and C37 in A Block in 1908. There were two windows in the front wall, one in the rear wall and a door into C40 in the pier wall. The room was divided into two rooms, two ante-rooms or closets and an entrance. Sergeant major's quarters were located in both rooms.

By 1922 the two small partitions parallel to the pier walls had been removed, making a corridor across the casemate. A diagonal passage had

been opened into C42. The front room was the Adjutant's office and the rear one was the office of the Commander, Royal Canadian Artillery.

The casemate's use did not alter between 1922 and 1924. In 1932, 15 men on the Unemployment Relief Project were housed in C41. In 1947 the military wanted to retain the casemate for continued use.

#### *Casemate 41B*

There were two rooms used as sergeant major's quarters and an entranceway in the basement of casemate 41 in 1908. Most of the partitions had been removed by 1922; the only one remaining was the entranceway's back partition which had been extended across the casemate. There were two windows in the front and back walls. Stores were kept in the casemate circa 1940.

#### D Block

##### *Casemate 42*

Casemate 42 was considered to be part of D Block in 1907. The only opening in the casemate on the 1908 plan was a window in the front wall. For obvious reasons no use is given for the casemate on that plan. The other 1908 plan describes it as "W.C. & urinal" but probably is referring to the basement.<sup>79</sup> One explanation is that, at this time, there was no floor at parade-level to divide the casemate into two storeys.

By 1922 there were two doors in C42. The window had been changed to a door and a bridge had been built over the area in front of the redan. A diagonal passage in the pier wall opened into C41. The casemate was the new entrance to offices in C41, C40 and C39.

C42 was not included in the section of the redan which the Unemployment Relief Project planned to occupy in 1932 but was part of the space which the military wished to retain in 1947. In circa 1940 it had been used for storage.

In 1950 there was a porch on the bridge in front of C42, similar to the porch of C36.<sup>80</sup> It had a sloped roof, side window and front door.

*Casemate 42B*

In 1908 C42B was an officers' urinal with three earth closets enclosed by partitions. A door into the area was the only opening in the basement casemate. The casemate was empty in 1922.

*Casemate 43*

There were two rooms in C43 and an entranceway with a curved partition which faced the side door. The front room was an office for an "O.C." in 1908, 1922, and 1924. The back room was a clerks' room in 1908 and a company office in 1922 and 1924.

Accommodation for 15 men was provided during the Unemployment Relief Project. In circa 1940, C43 was used as N.C.O.s' quarters. The military continued to use the casemate after World War II and wanted to retain it after the proposed transfer to the Department of Mines and Resources.

There were two windows in the front wall and one window in the back wall. The only door was located in the pier wall shared with C44.

*Casemate 43B*

Casemate 43B consisted of two principal rooms and a side entranceway in 1908 and 1922. The basement held R.C.E. stores in 1908 but seems to have been vacant in 1922. The circa 1940 plan places a boiler room in the casemate.

In 1908 and 1922 there were two windows in the rear wall and one window in the front wall. The only door was in the side wall shared with C44B.

*Casemate 44*

"D Passage" ran from the front door of C44 to a back room which was occupied by the Master Gunner in 1908, 1922 and 1924. A room beside the passage contained the sergeant major's office in 1908. There is no indication of a set of stairs at the back of the passage on the 1908 and 1922 plans.

One of the administration offices was situated in C44 during the Unemployment Relief Project. (See Figure 5). In circa 1940 NCOs were quartered

in the casemate. The army attempted to secure continued use as a condition of a proposed transfer to the Department of Mines and Resources in 1947.

There were two windows with one large interior opening and a door in the front wall, and one window in the rear wall. There was a door into C43 in the common pier wall.

#### *Casemate 44B*

The basement floorplan closely resembled that of the upper floor, C44 in 1908 and 1922. There was one room at the end of "D Passage" and one beside it. R.C.E. stores were stored in the rooms in 1908. The casemate may have been part of the boiler room shown on the circa 1940 plan.

There were two windows in the back wall and a window and a door in the front wall in 1908 and 1922. A door in the pier wall connected 44B and 43B.

#### E Block

##### *Casemate 45*

Casemate 45 was part of the recreation establishment in the Redan at the beginning of the Canadian period. It was a reading room in 1908 and circa 1910.<sup>81</sup> In 1911 there was a proposal to convert the recreation establishment to a Sergeants' Mess and to use C45 as the library.<sup>82</sup> It was proposed to add two back windows, to build a set of stairs to the basement, to create an entranceway at the door, and to install a phone. There is nothing to suggest that the plan was implemented.

By 1922 the casemate was divided into two rooms and was being used as No. 1 Company office. In 1932 it was set up as a six-bed hospital for the Unemployment Relief Project. In circa 1940 it was labelled "ARP". When a transfer of ownership was under discussion in 1947, the military wanted to retain C45.

There were four windows in the front wall, one window in the back wall, and a door in the side wall shared with C46. The back window seems to have been a double-leaf casement in 1911. The front windows were sash windows in 1928.<sup>83</sup>



*Casemate 45B*

Quartermasters Stores were kept in C45B in 1908. In that year and in 1922 there were two windows in the front and back walls, a door in the side wall shared with C46B, and a partition at the back of the casemate.

Major alterations were proposed in 1911.<sup>84</sup> The casemate was to be a washroom with a bath, a shower, two sinks, two urinals and two toilets, all installed along the wall shared with C44B. Stairs were to be constructed on the other side wall, and the back windows were to be enlarged. Nothing was done.

*Casemate 46*

Casemate 46 was the coffee bar of the recreation establishment in 1908 and circa 1910.<sup>85</sup> What probably was a counter divided the casemate. Another piece of furniture was built in a back corner. "E Passage" ran from the front door to the basement steps.

In 1911 proposal for a Sergeants' Mess suggested the removal of the passage and steps, and the addition of a second back window.<sup>86</sup> The casemate was to be the "anteroom" of the proposed mess.

By 1922 the furnishings had been removed and a partition stood where the counter had been. No. 1 Company store was in the front room and the company storeman was in the back in 1922 while all of the casemate was an office for No. 1 Company in 1924. In 1932, C46 was set up for the medical officer of the Unemployment Relief Project and also seems to have been used as additional accommodation for special cases.<sup>87</sup> In circa 1940 it was N.C.O.s' quarters. The army wanted to retain the casemate when the Departments of National Defence and Mines and Resources were discussing transfer in 1947.

There were two windows and a door in the front wall and one window in the back wall. The 1911 proposal shows the back window to be a casement window. Doors in the pier walls connected C45 with C46 and C47.

The proposal plan of 1911 included an exterior porch with a cloakroom extension over the area in front of C46. It seems that the porch was extant and the cloakroom was proposed. In 1928 a porch with a flat roof was located at the door to the casemate.<sup>88</sup>

*Casemate 46B*

There were two rooms, a passage and stairs in C46B in 1908 and 1922. Two windows were located in the back wall, a window and door in the front wall and a door in both side walls. Quartermasters' Stores were held in the casemate in 1908. In 1922 it was vacant. The front room may have been a barber's shop, circa 1940.

In 1911 there was a proposal to install a furnace in the basement casemate.<sup>89</sup> The floorplan called for a furnace room in the back, two coal storage rooms in the front and an empty area between them. The passage from the door was to remain but the stairs were to be removed. A second front window was also proposed. The proposal was not carried out, and the casemate remained the same in 1908 and 1922.

## F Block

*Casemate 47*

Casemate 47 was the recreation room of the recreation establishment in 1908 and circa 1910.<sup>90</sup> In 1922 and 1924, when the other casemates of the establishment had been converted to new uses, C47 continued to be a recreation room. The casemate was designated a RCE office when the Unemployment Relief Project was established in 1932. It was NCOs' quarters in circa 1940. When transfer of Citadel ownership was under consideration in 1947, the army wanted to retain C47.

The casemate was one large room in 1908 and 1922. There were four windows in the front wall, one window in the back wall and a door in the pier walls.

In the proposal for a Sergeants' Mess in 1911, C47 was to be a billiards room and bar.<sup>91</sup> Two "hatches" were to be created in the pier wall shared with C46 and two rear windows were to be added. The billiard table was to be in the front of the casemate. An enclosed bar was proposed for a back corner and was to have a sink and built-in furniture. The partition facing the front of the casemate was to have a long window, two panes deep and six panes wide.

*Casemate 47B*

There were several divisions in C47B in 1908. An entranceway with two doors was located at the door into C48B. One partition ran across the middle of the casemate to the entranceway while a second partition ran across the rear of the casemate. There were quartermasters' stores in C47B in 1908.

By 1922 the back partition had been removed, leaving two rooms and the entranceway. The casemate was empty.

The 1911 plan for a Sergeants' Mess proposed a beer cellar in the back of the casemate and a store and larder in the front.<sup>92</sup> Three partitions were required - two running across the casemate and one dividing the front section into two halves. The proposal was not implemented and C47B remained relatively the same in 1908 and 1922.

There were two windows in the front and back walls and a door in the both side walls in 1908 and 1922.

*Casemate 48*

Although casemate 48 was part of the recreation establishment, it seems to have been vacant in 1908 and circa 1910.<sup>93</sup> It was occupied by No. 2 Company store in 1922 and by R. Company in 1924. One of the offices for the R.C.E. was in the casemate during the Unemployment Relief Project. Circa 1940 it was N.C.O.s' quarters. The army wanted to retain C48 when the Departments of National Defence and Mines and Resources discussed a transfer in 1947.

In 1908 and 1922 the casemate consisted of one large room, "F" Passage and a set of stairs. There were two windows with one interior opening, and a door in the front wall, one window in the back wall and a door into C47 in the side wall. The front openings remained the same in 1928 and 1950.<sup>94</sup> The 1911 proposal showed a casement rear window.<sup>95</sup>

In the 1911 proposal, C48 was to be the dining room of the Sergeants' Mess. The passage and stairs were to be removed and another window was to be added to the back wall. A dumb waiter to the kitchen below was to be installed in the side wall. The plan was not implemented.

*Casemate 48B*

Casemate 48B held quartermasters' stores in 1908 and was vacant in 1922. It was divided into two rooms and a passage with a set of stairs. A window and door were located in the front wall and two windows in the rear wall. A door connected C48B and C47B.

The plan for a Sergeants' Mess in 1911 proposed a kitchen for C48B.<sup>96</sup> Major renovations were suggested - the removal of the stairs and partitions, and the addition of a front window. A dumb waiter and sink were to be installed on the side wall. Two panes of glass were shown in the two rear windows on the plan.

*Casemate 49*

Casemate 49 is located to the left of the entrance to the Citadel and was used as a guardroom during the Canadian period. It was described as a guard room in 1907, 1908, circa 1910, 1922, 1924, and circa 1940. Watchmen at the unemployment relief camp used the casemate.<sup>97</sup> Following the closure of the camp in 1936, four caretakers had their quarters in C49 and C50.<sup>98</sup> The military wanted to retain C49 in 1947.

In 1908 and circa 1910 the casemate was divided into two rooms.<sup>99</sup> A dining room, presumably for the guards, was located in the back room. By 1922 the division was gone and two telephones and a heater were located in the guard room. The phones were labelled "C. Tel." and "N. Tel.". In a 1928 photo, telephone and electrical wires are seen going into the casemate through front windows. (See-Figure 27).

The 1908 and 1922 plans show two windows in the front wall. It seems that the larger opening was, in fact, two windows with one interior opening. An arrangement of two windows together and a third further along the wall is seen in the 1928 photo. The windows were sash windows, six over six, in 1928.

In 1908, 1922 and 1950 there were three openings in the back wall, a reminder of C49's origin as a defence casemate.<sup>100</sup> Two openings in both side walls connected C49 to the Citadel entrance and to C50.

*Casemate 50*

Casemate 50 was part of the guard room establishment. In 1908, circa 1910, 1922 and 1924 there were two cells in the front of the casemate and a prisoners' room in the back. The watchmen in the unemployment relief camp slept in the guard room cells.<sup>101</sup> In November of 1936 the four caretakers had their quarters in C49 and C50 and in 1947 it was a guardroom.<sup>102</sup> The military wanted to retain C50 in 1947.

Access was from C49; one door opened directly into the prisoners' room and another opened into a corridor in front of the cells. There were two windows in the front wall in 1908, 1922 and 1928 and three openings in the rear wall in 1908, 1922, 1927 and 1950.<sup>103</sup> The front windows were sash windows, six over six, in 1928, (See Figure 27).

Demi-casemates

There are 50 demi-casemates in the Citadel retaining walls - 19 in the southeast salient, nine in the southwest demi-bastion, 13 in the west curtain and nine in the northwest demi-bastion. There is very little information about them for the Canadian period. Uses are supplied for 1908 and one casemate use is given for 1922. Where information is available, it is outlined below, by casemate, and tabulated at the end of the chapter.

Twenty-seven of the demi-casemates had collapsed and six were about to fail when the engineers assigned by the Massey Commission examined the Citadel in 1950.<sup>104</sup>

## Southeast Salient, Demi-casemates 1-19

There are 19 demi-casemates in the southeast salient - 12 in the east retaining wall and seven in the south retaining wall. Two masonry buttresses give added support to the walls. They are located beside DC1 and every second demi-casemate on the east retaining wall and beside DC13 and every second demi-casemate on the south retaining wall. The buttresses appear on plans and photographs throughout the Canadian period.

The 1908 and 1922 plans supply the only information on the demi-casemates for the Canadian period. The building material of the walls constructed

at the front of the demi-casemates is assumed to be either brick or wood, depending on the thickness of the line drawn on the plans. Thus, the front walls of demi-casemate 8, 10, 11, and 12 are assumed to be brick and the front wall of demi-casemate 13, which was the same thickness as interior partitions, is assumed to be wood.

In 1950 most of the demi-casemates in the southeast salient were fenced off from the public.<sup>105</sup> The engineers reporting to the Massey Commission stated that demi-casemates 1 to 7 and 13 to 19 had collapsed and needed to be replaced.

#### *Demi-casemate 1*

Demi-casemate 1 was used to store ashes in 1908.

#### *Demi-casemate 2*

There was a bin in the southeast corner of demi-casemate 2 in 1908. No trace of it appears on the 1922 plan.

#### *Demi-casemates 6 and 7*

Stores were kept in demi-casemates 6 and 7 in 1908. A V-shaped symbol is shown in front of both demi-casemates, possibly indicating doors similar to those seen on the neighbouring gun shed.

#### *Demi-casemate 8*

In 1908 demi-casemate 8 was an earth closet, with seats on the north wall. In 1908 and 1922 a wall, presumably of brick, ran between the pier walls and closed the demi-casemate. A center door and a window were shown in the wall on the 1908 plan.

*Demi-casemate 10*

Oil was stored in demi-casemate 10 in 1908. A wall, which seems to have been brick, closed the demi-casemate in 1908 and 1922. A door was situated in the center. The 1908 plan indicates that either a tank had been installed or possibly shelves had been built along the back and two pier walls.

*Demi-casemate 11*

Coal was stored in demi-casemate 11 in 1908. In 1908 and 1922 a wall with a center door ran between the two pier walls. The front wall seems to have been brick.

*Demi-casemate 12*

By 1908 demi-casemate 12 was the ablution room for the signal staff crew quartered in casemates 3 and 4. The front of the demi-casemate had been filled by a wall with three windows and furnishings built on the inside of the wall. The only access to the demi-casemate was through a door into casemate 3.

The wall is assumed to have been brick. A brick wall with two windows is still standing.

*Demi-casemate 13*

Demi-casemate 13 was in the south retaining wall of the southeast salient. In 1908 and 1922 the demi-casemate was closed by a wall which appears to have been wood. A door was situated in the center of the wall. In 1908 coal was stored in the demi-casemate.

Southwest Demi-bastion, Demi-casemates 20-28.

Almost nothing is known about the nine demi-casemates in the Southwest Demi-bastion during the Canadian period. They were either empty or without specific function in 1908 for no use is given on the plan. Inside measurement of 9 ft. 6 in. across by 7 ft. deep are supplied on a 1943 plan.<sup>106</sup>

*Demi-casemate 21*

In 1943, there was a proposal to establish an O.R.'s (Other Ranks') lavatory in demi-casemate 21.<sup>107</sup> A wooden wall was to be erected across the opening of the demi-casemate. There was to be a center door flanked by two windows of 24 over 24. The facilities proposed were a urinal on the west wall and a basin and toilet on the south wall. The inside measurements of the proposed lavatory were 9 ft. 6 in. across by 6 ft. 6 in. deep.

*Demi-casemate 24*

Demi-casemate 24 is shown in section on the 1911 proposal for a recreation establishment on the rampart of the southwest demi-bastion.<sup>108</sup> The elevation of the parade was 78.76 ft. while the elevation of the arch was 88.26 feet.

*Demi-casemate 27*

Demi-casemate 27 is seen in section on the plan of the South Magazine in 1943.<sup>109</sup> The pier wall measured 7 ft. 3 in. to the spring of the arch. The height to the top of the arch was 9 ft. 8 in. and the thickness of the arch was 1ft. 2 in.

*West Curtain, Demi-casemates 29-41.*

The demi-casemates of the west curtain did not survive the Canadian period. The Unemployment Relief Project dismantled the section of retaining wall between the sallyports and attempted a partial reconstruction of some of the demi-casemates. By 1950, demi-casemates 29 to 36 were in ruins and the partially-reconstructed demi-casemates 37 to 41 were little more than a tidy ruin. (See Figures 35 and 36). The Massey engineers recommended that the 1930s' work be removed and that the demi-casemates be reconstructed. (See Citadel Walls, West Curtain Retaining Wall, p. 135).



*Demi-casemate 29*

Demi-casemate 29 was a lime store in 1908. There was a light wall with a center door in the front in 1908 and 1922.

*Demi-casemate 30*

Oil was stored in demi-casemate 30 in 1908. A light wall, presumably of wood, ran across the front and had a door at the south end. It was still standing in 1922.

*Demi-casemate 31*

Demi-casemate 31 was a lamp room in 1908. In 1908 and 1922 there was a front wall, assumed to be of wood, with a center door.

*Demi-casemate 32*

Canteen oil was stored in demi-casemate 32 in 1908. In 1908 and 1922 the demi-casemate had a front wall which appears to have been wood. A center door was situated in the center of the wall.

*Demi-casemate 33*

Demi-casemate 33 held coal in 1908. The front wall had a wide center opening and seems to have been made of wood. It was still standing in 1922.

*Demi-casemate 34*

Oil was stored in demi-casemate 34 in 1908 and 1922. A wall with a center door was situated at the front of the demi-casemate. The wall was probably constructed of wood.

*Demi-casemate 35*

The front wall of demi-casemate 35 was not the same as the front walls of demi-casemates 29 to 34. The 1908 plan shows a thicker, open line which abuts against the inside of the north pier wall. This wall possibly was brick. Since the front of the north pier wall was the same thickness as the rest of the pier wall and did not end in a "T", it may have been structurally necessary or easier for a sturdier front wall than the usual wooden one. A drafting error is also possible. The wall is shown as a standard front demi-casemate wall on the 1922 plan.

In 1908 there was swill in demi-casemate 35.

*Demi-casemate 36*

There were utility tubs in demi-casemate 36 in 1908. A front wall with a door at the north end closed the demi-casemate in 1908 and 1922. The same type of front wall is shown for DC36 and DC35 in 1908. What possibly was a brick wall abutted against the south pier wall and ended short of the north pier wall, leaving an opening at the north end.

*Demi-casemate 37*

Ashes were stored in demi-casemate 37 in 1908.

*Demi-casemate 38*

Demi-casemate 38 was a store in 1908. A wall with a wide center opening ran between and abutted on the inside of the two pier walls. This wall possibly was brick. The two pier walls were straight rather than T-shaped and may not have easily accommodated a light front wall.

*Demi-casemates 39 and 40*

There were pioneer's stores in demi-casemates 39 and 40 in 1908.

*Demi-casemate 41*

Demi-casemate 41 was a store in 1908. In 1908 and 1922 a wooden partition blocked the door into casemate 54 in the demi-casemate's north wall.

## Northwest Demi-bastion, Demi-casemates 42-50

There are no known uses for the demi-casemates of the northwest demi-bastion during the Canadian period. They were in slightly better condition than most of the other Citadel demi-casemates in 1950. Although they had not collapsed, failure was evident and it was recommended that they be demolished and replaced.<sup>110</sup>

*Demi-casemate 49*

What seems to be a brick masonry wall ran across the opening of demi-casemate 49 in 1908 and 1922. There was a wide door opening at the west end. The front wall was no longer in evidence in 1950.<sup>111</sup>

*Demi-casemate 50*

In 1908 and 1922 demi-casemate 50 was closed by a wall, probably of brick, with a wide center opening. By 1950 the front of the demi-casemate was open.<sup>112</sup>

## Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Table 2

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-0	-	-	-	No. 4 Cartridge Store	-
C-1	R.A. Store	-	R. A. Store	R. A. Store	-
C-2	Bread & Meat Store	-	Bread & Meat Store	Bread & Meat	-
C-3	Store	-	Men	Dining Room Living Room	-
C-4	Barrack Room	-	Men	Signal Staff 8 men	-
C-5	Store	-	Condemned	Q.M.'s Office	-
C-6	Engine House	-	Engine House	Q.M.'s Store	-
C-6A	-	-	-	-	-
C-7	Store	-	R. A. Store No. 3	R. A. Store	-
C-8	E. T. Store	-	El Tel Store R. C. E.	E. L. Store	-
C-9	Latrine	-	Latrine	Latrines	1910 Latrines Urinal
C-10	Shoemaker	-	Shoe makers shop	Barber's shop	-
C-11	Coal Store	-	-	Coal Store	-
C-12	Coal Store	-	-	Coal Store	-

## Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1922	1924	1932	1940	Other
C-0	Oil Store	Oil Store		-	
C-1	Paint Store	Paint Store		-	
C-2	-	-		-	
C-3	Coal	Coal		-	
C-4	- Signal Switch	-		-	
C-5	Wood Shed	Wood Shed		-	1928 Court Martial Room
C-6	Fire Hose	Fire Hose		-	1928 QRM Stores
C-6A	-	-		-	1943 Furnace Room
C-7	Store	Store	Shop URP*	-	
C-8	Store	Store	Shop URP	-	Carpenter Blacksmith Plumber
C-9	Latrines	Latrines	Shop URP	-	
C-10	-	-	-	-	
C-11	Coal Store	Coal Store		-	
C-12	Coal Store	Coal Store		-	

\* Unemployment Relief Project

## Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-13	Coal Store	-	-	Coal-Store	-
C-14	Latrine	-	Latrine & Urinal	Latrines	1910 Latrines
C-15	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	N.C.O.'s Rec <sup>n</sup> Room	Jr. NCO's canteen	-
C-15A	-	-	-	-	-
C-16	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	-
C-17	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	-
C-18	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	1915 Prisoners of War Quarters
C-19	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	1915 Prisoners of War Quarters ,
C-20	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	1915 Prisoners of War Quarters
C-21	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	1915 Prisoners of War Quarters
C-22	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Soldiers Room 11 men	Qtrs. 11 men	1915 Prisoners of War Quarters
C-23	Ablution Room	Ablution Room	Ablution Room	Ablution Room	1910 Ablution Room 1915 POW Abl Room
C-24	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	12 men	12 men	1915 P. of War Guards
C-25	Barrack Room	Soldiers' Room	Sergts	Sergts	1915 P. of War Guards

216  
Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1922	1924	1932	1940	Other
C-13	Coal Store	Coal Store		-	
C-14	Latrines	Latrines		-	
C-15	-	-	-	-	
C-15A	-	-	-	-	
C-16	-	-	-	Lecture Room	
C-17	Lecture & Recreation (Unused) R.C.R.	Lecture & Recreation R.C.R.	-	Lecture Room	
C-18	R.C.R. A. Coy Office	A. Coy Office R.C.R.	-	Lecture Room	
C-19	Sgts. Mess RCR Single Sgts. RCR	SGT'S Mess Single SGTS'	-	Lecture Room	
C-20	Shoemaker R.C.R. (and barber?)	Shoemaker R.C.R.	-	Engineers	
C-21	R.C.R. Clothing Store	Clothing Stores		Engineers	
C-22	R.C.R. Q.M. Stores	Q.M. Stores R.C.R.		Lecture Room	
C-23	Wash House	Wash House	-	Lecture Room	
C-24	Vegetable Store	Vegetable Store	-	Lecture Room	
C-25	Butcher Shop	Butcher Shop	-	Lecture Room	

## Casemate Use , Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-26	Sergeants Mess	Sergeants Mess	Sergeants' Mess Room Bar	Sgt's Mess -	1913-Mess Room
C-27	Sergeants Mess	Sergeants Mess	Sergt's Billiard Room Platform	Sgt's Billiard Room -	1913 Billiard Room
C-28	Sergeants mess	Sergeants mess	Sergt's Dining Mess cellar	Sergts mess Dining -	1913 Dining Room Proposed Bathroom
C-29	Sergeants mess	Sergeants mess	Sergts mess kitchen Pantry	Mess Kitchen -	1913-Kitchen
C-30	Sergeants mess	Sergeants mess	-	Main Shell Store	-
C-31	Tailor Shop	-	Tailors Shop	Tailor Shop Store	-
C-32	Shell Store	-	-	R. A. Store	-
C-33	Shell Store	-	-	No. 3 Cart. Store	-
C-34	Company Office	-	Company Store	No. 1 Company Store	-
C-35	Company Office	-	Company Store	No. 2 Company Store	-
C-36		A Block	A Block	No. 2 Coy Office Orderly	-
C-36B				Stores Stores	-
C-37		A Block	A Block	No. 1 Coy Office Orderly	-
C-37B				Stores Stores	



## Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1922	1924	1932	1940	Other
C-26	Reading Room -	-	-	Lecture Room	1921 Reading Room
C-27	Billiard Room -	Board Room	-	Lecture Room	1921 Billiard Room Platform
C-28	Sgts.' Mess - (toilet)	SGTS. Mess	-	-	1921 Dining Room Ablution Room
C-29	Kitchen -	Kitchen	-	Lecture Room	1921 Kitchen Pantry
C-30	Cart. Store	Cart. Stores	-	(Stores?)	
C-31	Tailor Shop	Tailor Shop	Administration URP	S/L Ord Room	
C-32	Cart. Store	Cart. Store	Administration URP	Stores	
C-33	Shell Store	Shell Store	-	Stores	
C-34	R.Q.M.S. Stores	R.QMs Stores	15 men - URP	Fortress Plotting Room	
C-35	R.Q.M.S. Stores	R.QMs Stores	15 men - URP	Fortress Plotting Room	
C-36	Q. M. Stores Small Stores	QMs Stores	15 men - URP	Orderly Room Major Murray	
C-36B	-	-	-	-	
C-37	Q. M. Office R. Q. Ms. Clerk	QM Office RQMS Clerk	15 men - URP	Major Perron	
C-37B	Q.M. Stores			-	

## Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-38		B Block	B Block	Q. M. office Q. M. Stores	-
C-38B				Stores Stores	
C-39		B Block	B Block	Officer's Qtrs Servant	-
C-39B				Stores Stores	-
C-40		C Block	C Block	S. M. Qtrs. S. M. Qtrs.	-
C-40B				S.M. Qtrs; Bath S. M. Qtrs.	-
C-41		C Block	C Block	S. M. Qtrs. S. M. Qtrs.	-
C-41B				S. M. Qtrs. S. M. Qtrs.	-
C-42		D Block	W. C. & Urinal	-	-
C-42B				Officers' Urinal	-
C-43		D Block	D Block CO & Offices	O. C. Office Clerks	-
C-43B				R.C.E. Stores	-
C-44		D Block	D Block CO & Offices	S. M. Office M <sup>r</sup> . Gunner	-
C-44B				R.C.E. Stores	-

## Casemate Use , Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1922	1924	1932	1940	Other
C-38	Armament Office	Armament Office Supply	15 men - URP	Pay Office	
	Supply & Fyles			Wash Room	
E-38B	(Stores)	(Stores)		-	
C-39	Central Registry	Central Registry Supply	Ablution Room URP	Officers' Qtrs.	
	Stationery Supply			Wash Room	
C-39B	(Bathroom)	(Stores)	Ablution Room URP	-	
	Furnace Room				
C-40	Clerks Office	R.S.M. Office	15 men - URP	Officers' Qtrs	
	RSM Office				
C-40B	(Toilet)	-		Stores	
	-				
C-41	Adjutant Office	ADJ. Office CRC. Office	15 men - URP	Officers' Qtrs	
	CRC. Office			Bar	
C-41B	-	-		-	
C-42	New Entrance	-		Stores	
C-42B	-	-		-	
C-43	O.C. #2Coy Office	O.C. Room Coy Office	15 men - URP	NCO's qtrs.	
	#2Coy Office				
C-43B	(Vacant)	-		Boiler Room	
C-44	-	-	Administration URP	NCO's qtrs.	
	Master Gunner	Master Gunner			
C-44B	(Vacant)	-		Boiler Room	

## Casemate Use ,Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-45		E Block	E Block Recreation Estment	Reading Room	1910 Reading Room
C-45B				Q.M. Stores	
C-46		E Block	E Block Recreation Estment	Coffee Bar	1910 Coffee Bar
C-46B				Q.M. Stores	
C-47		F Block	F Block Recreation Estment	Recreation Room	1910 Recreation Room
C-47B				Q.M. Stores	
C-48		F Block	F Block Recreation Estment	-	-
C-48B				Q.M. Stores	
C-49		Guard Room	Guard Room	Guard Room Dining Room	1910 Guard Room Dining Room
C-50		Cells	Cells Lock-up	2 Cells Lock-up Room	1910 2 Cells Prisoners Room
C-51		Garrison Cells No. 1	-	Garrison Cells	
C-52		Garrison Cells No. 1	-	Garrison Cells	
C-53		-	-	Cartridge Store No 1.	
C-54		-	-	-	-

222  
Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1922	1924	1932	1940	Other
C-45	#1 Coy Office	"1" Coy Office	6 Bed Hospital URP	ARP	1911 Proposed Library
C-45B	(Vacant)			-	1911 Proposed Washrooms/ Lavatory
C-46	#1 Coy Store	"1" Coy Office	Medical Officer URP	NCO's Qtrs.	1911 Proposed Ante Room
	Coy Storeman				
C-46B	(Vacant)	-		Barber Shop	1911 Proposed Coal Storage Furnace
				-	
C-47	Recreation Room	<del>Recreation Room</del>	RCE Office	NCO's Qtrs	1911 Proposed Billiards Bar
C-47B	(Vacant)	-		-	1911 Proposed Store Larder Beer Cellar
C-48	#2 Coy Store	R. Coy	RCE Office	NCO's Qtrs.	1911 Proposed Dining Room
C-48B	(Vacant)	-			1911 Proposed Kitchen
C-49	Guard Room	Guard Room		Guard Room	1936 Caretakers Quarters
C-50	Cells	Coal		-	1936 Caretakers Quarters
	Prisoners Room	Prisoner Room			
C-51	-			-	
C-52	-			-	
C-53	-			-	
C-54	-			-	

223  
Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Casemate Number	1906	1907	1908 (1)	1908 (2)	1910 1913, 1915
C-55			-		-
C-56			-	Cartridge Store No. 2	-
C-57		Garrison Cells No. 2	-	-	-
C-58		Garrison Cells No. 2	-	-	-



## Demi-Casemate Use, Canadian Period

Table 3

Casemate Number	1908	1922
-----------------	------	------

DC-1	Ashes	-
DC-2	(Bin)	-
DC-3	-	-
DC-4*	-	-
DC-5	-	-
DC-6	Store	-
DC-7	Store	-
DC-8	Earth closet (enclosed)	- (enclosed)
DC-9	-	-
DC-10	Oil (enclosed)	- (enclosed)
DC-11	Coal (enclosed)	- (enclosed)
DC-12	Ablution Room (enclosed)	- (enclosed)
DC-13	Coal (enclosed)	- (enclosed)
DC-14	-	-

Casemate Number	1908	1922
-----------------	------	------

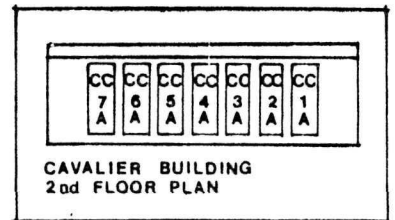
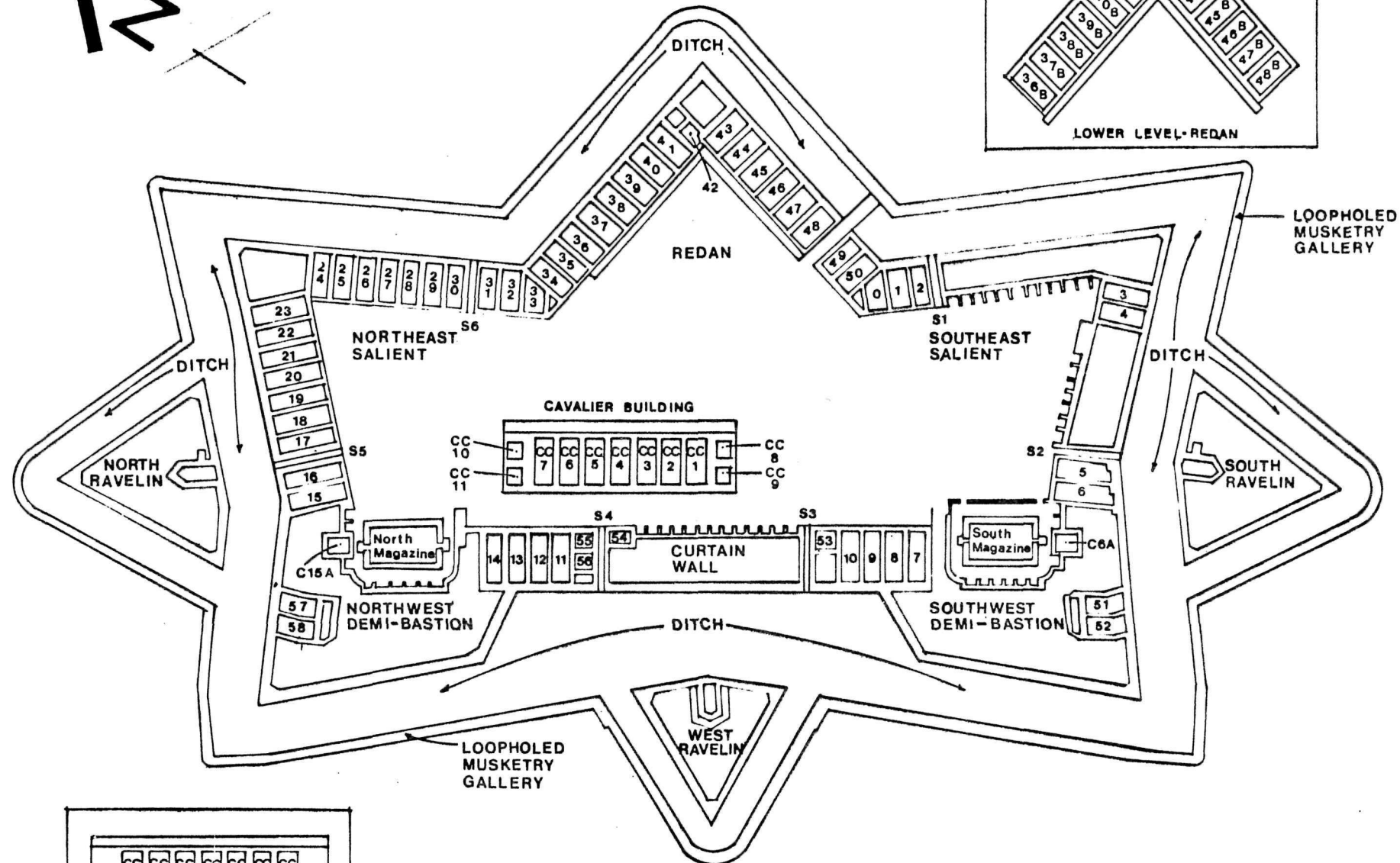
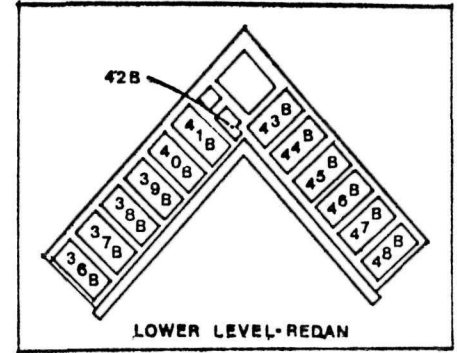
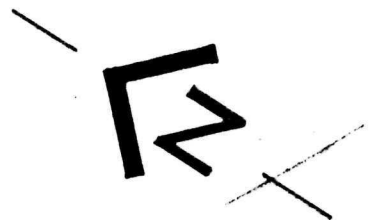
DC-15	-	-
DC-16	-	-
DC-17	-	-
DC-18	-	-
DC-19	-	-
DC-20	-	-
DC-21	-	-
DC-22	-	-
DC-23	-	-
DC-24	-	-
DC-25	-	-
DC-26	-	-
DC-27	-	-
DC-28	-	-







41 Trace, with casemate numbers. (Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex.)



HALIFAX CITADEL  
 HALIFAX N. S. SCALE 1":120' (APPROX.)

Appendix A. MEMORANDUM of AGREEMENT between the GENERAL OFFICER COMMANDING, CANADA, representing HIS MAJESTY'S SECRETARY OF STATE FOR WAR, and the MILITIA COUNCIL representing the DOMINION GOVERNMENT of CANADA.

It is agreed as follows:--

1. The Militia Council take over the control of the Garrison of Halifax, and assume the financial responsibility for maintaining the defences as from 1st July 1905.
2. The War Department transfers to the Militia, (sic) free of charge, and with fixtures, all their lands, buildings, and fortifications in Nova Scotia as coloured pink in the plan and enumerated in the inventory accompanying this agreement; the boundaries of which properties are more particularly indicated in the War Department property book dated 13th April 1895 now in charge of the Militia Council (copy at the War Office).

The transfer of the War Department properties are (sic) made on the following condition viz:-

- (a) That they are held by the Dominion Government for so long as they are required for Colonial Military purposes, and that when they cease to be used for such purposes they shall revert to the War Department to be disposed of for the entire benefit of the Imperial Government.
- (b) The Dominion Government are free to remove or alter buildings now existing on War Department land, on the understanding that in the event of the ground ever being handed back, the Colony will either replace the buildings, or return to the War Department the value placed upon them in the accompanying Inventory.
- (b) Should, however, it be considered necessary for the Colony to remove War Department buildings to suit Colonial Military requirements and not to replace them, and at the same time not to incur the possible future liability, the sanction of the Army Council must first be obtained.
- (d) The Militia Council are empowered to authorize and determine

lettings and encroachments. The agreements connected herewith have been handed over accordingly.

- (e) The Dominion Government further agree to take over the plot at Fort Massey coloured blue on plan and to look after it and maintain the ground as a Military Cemetery.
- (c) In the event of all, or any, of the property reverting to the Imperial Government the Militia Council will-at the request of the Army Council-arrange for its disposal free of all agency or other charge and will look after and maintain the property at the expense of the Dominion Government pending its disposal.
- (g) The whole of the property was formally transferred on 16th January ----- 1906.

Halifax, N.S.

30/1/07.

22/2/07.

B. R. Ward. Lt.-Col.

For General Officer Commanding,  
Canada

E. Fiset. Col. D.M.M.&D.

For Minister Militia and Defence.

Appendix B. CHART SHOWING THE CHAIN OF RESPONSIBILITY  
 in Unemployment Relief Camps, organized under the  
 Department of National Defence Scheme in Military  
 District No. 6.

-----:0:-----

District Officer Commanding.

All matters of policy; decisions on any question arising.

Assistant Adjutant & Quartermaster General.

Supervision generally of administration; giving effect to and carrying out of policy decided upon. Directly represents the District Officer Commanding.

District Engineer Officer.

Control, supervision and carrying out of all works of construction approved; Engineer services in connection with camps. Preparation of plans and estimates for all works proposed. Control of men employed on works. Accounting for Engineer expenditures.

District Ordnance Officer.

Provision of clothing and equipment; supervision of stores accounting; audit of stores and stores accounts except engineering stores.

District Supply & Transport Officer.

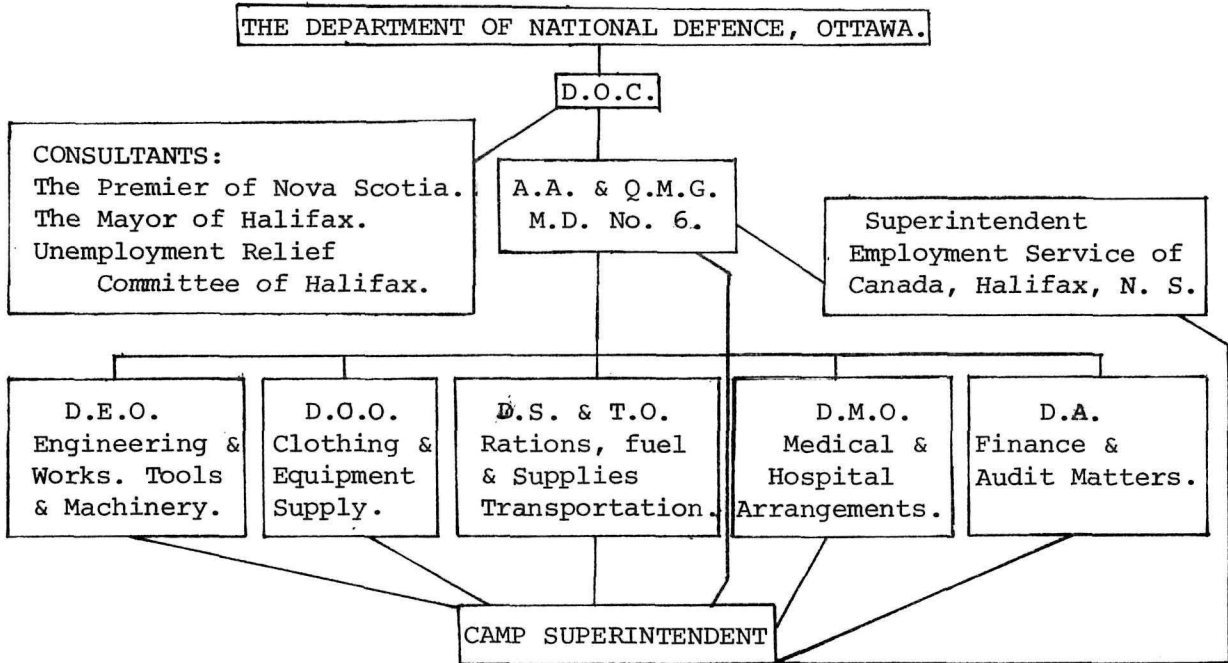
Provision of food supply, fuel, light, water and conservancy; supervision of all supplies and supply accounts. All matters relating to provision of horsed or mechanical transport.

District Medical Officer.

Arranging for medical inspection and examination of men; categorization for work fitted for; hospitalization and all medical matters; health of men and sanitation. Transfer of sick and injured to civil hospitals as he deems necessary.

District Accountant.

Supervision of all financial matters; issue of pay by or in consultation with D.E.O. Audit of all financial accounts and pay sheets.





## Appendix C.

RULES AND REGULATIONS.UNEMPLOYMENT RELIEF CAMP.CITADEL, HALIFAX.

1. IDENTIFICATION. Each man must have continuously in his possession the identification disc, issued from Camp Office. He must produce it upon request of any authorized person at any time.

2. HOURS
- |             |   |                            |
|-------------|---|----------------------------|
| Rising      | - | 6.30 a.m.                  |
| Breakfast   | - | 6.45 a.m.                  |
| Work        | - | 8.00 a.m.(on job) to 12.00 |
| Dinner      | - | 12.00 p.m.                 |
| Work        | - | 1.00 to 5.00 p.m.          |
| Supper      | - | 5.15 p.m.                  |
| Gate closes | - | 10.30 p.m.                 |
| Lights out  | - | 11.00 p.m.                 |

3. WORK Each man will be assigned to work and he is expected to render eight (8) hours labour each working day.

NO WORK ON SUNDAYS OR HOLIDAYS.

4. ROOMS Sleeping quarters are to be kept neat and tidy at all times. On rising, each man must make up his own bed according to the method laid down by the Camp Superintendent.

A Room Orderly will be detailed, by roster, for sweeping and cleaning up rooms and passages, looking after fires, removing ashes, and thoroughly ventilating the rooms.

Sufficient windows will be kept open at night to provide proper ventilation, to ensure the health of the men.

One man will be selected by the Camp Superintendent for each room, who will be responsible for the maintenance of order. He will report to the Camp Superintendent, or his assistant.

A man assigned to a room for sleeping or meals must not move to another room without the approval of the camp Superintendent having first been obtained. This rule will be insisted upon as a necessary means of suitable recordkeeping.

Meals will only be served in the mess rooms, and food must not be carried away from the mess rooms, by any one, other than the mess room staff who take unconsumed food back to kitchens.

Meals will not be served at hours other than those fixed in Camp Orders.

5. GAMBLING. Gambling will not be permitted in the Camp.
6. WINES, BEER OR SPIRITUOUS LIQUOR. No wines, beer or spirituous liquor is to be taken into, or consumed, on the Camp area.
7. WOMEN. No women will be permitted to enter the Camp quarters under any circumstances. Women approaching the Camp Gate to see any man will be required to proceed to the Camp Office and state their business. If the Camp Superintendent considers the business of sufficient importance, the man will be notified and an appointment made to meet at the Camp Office.
8. COMPLAINTS. Complaints, or any trouble or difficulty, should be reported promptly to the Camp Superintendent, or his representative.  
  
The Camp Superintendent will investigate all complaints, and refer such as may be deemed necessary to Headquarters, Military District No. 6; otherwise he will make such adjustment as may appear necessary, on the spot.
9. CLOSING. The Main Gate will be closed at 10.30 p.m. Men cannot be permitted to come and go as they please. "Lights Out" at 11.00 p.m.  
  
Men are expected to be considerate of their comrades and not disturb those asleep or resting.
10. RECREATION. After working hours and evening meal, men may go out of Camp at their pleasure, but they must return before 10.30 p.m. Those arriving after the 10.30 p.m., closing hour will not be admitted until 6.30 a.m., next day.
11. GENERAL This Camp is instituted for the purpose of helping single, homeless, unemployed men. It will remain in operation until 31st March, 1933, only if proper conduct is shown.

The facilities afforded are here for your own comfort and well-being, It rests chiefly upon the spirit of

co-operation, and your own help, to keep the Camp healthy, clean, comfortable and orderly.

12. DISCIPLINE.

The maintaining of good conduct, and the continuance of proper discipline, rests largely upon the men themselves.

Misconduct and violation of Rules will result in the man, or men, concerned, being turned out of Camp.

Direct disobedience and causing a disturbance will be punished by removal from the Relief List, not only of this Camp, but all Relief measures anywhere in the City of Halifax.

Recourse to stringent measures can be avoided by observing proper conduct in all parts of the Camp.

The Camp Superintendent and the Camp Staff have back of them the Civil Laws, which will be made use of as and when necessary.

The true spirit of co-operation and assistance in building up loyalty to all engaged in efforts to help men in the present time of stress is all that is asked for.

PLAY THE GAME, fairly and honestly, and all will be helped.

13. BOUNDS.

All buildings and rooms not allotted for accommodation and administration within the Citadel Area, are "Out of Bounds".

No one is to enter any building placed "out of bounds".

14. SANITATION.

Ablution Rooms:- Keep basins clean.

Do not leave water taps running; dispose of all dirty water into proper receptacle provided.

Washing of clothes, etc. not be to done in wash basins, in ablution rooms.

Do not leave anything in basin which is liable to clog the waste pipes. Small pieces of soap cause pipes to clog.

Clogged pipes mean inconvenience to yourself and others.

Bath Tubs and Showers:- These may be used as frequently as desired. Bathe frequently; it prevents disease, and helps to keep you in good health.

Wash out the Bath Tub after using.

Help to keep the place clean and tidy.

Toilets: Use only toilet paper supplied. Newspaper or any coarse paper is liable to clog the soil pipes.

Do not throw matches, rags or other articles into the toilets.

Be as clean as possible, and leave the place in a useful condition for the next man.

Washing of Clothes:- A Wash Room is provided, with tubs, for your use, to wash your under clothes, socks, towels, handkerchiefs, etc.

Each man is responsible for his own cleanliness, and clothing.

A suitable drying room is provided for your comfort.

Here, again, is a place to keep clean and tidy. Help yourself and comrades to keep things clean and neat.

Report leaking pipes to Camp Office promptly, so that repairs may be made, at once.

#### 15. MEDICAL SERVICE.

A Medical Officer will be on duty at fixed hours daily. Any man requiring medical attention may visit the Medical Officer at that hour.

See the Medical Orderly, who is on duty, at all hours. He will arrange for you to see the Medical Officer, if necessary in your case. Seriously sick or injured men will be admitted to Hospital, on order of the Medical Officer, if he deems the case requires hospital treatment.

MEDICAL SERVICE IS FREE.

H.Q., M.D. NO. 6.,  
Halifax, N.S.  
1st Nov. 1932.

(D.W.B. Spry.)  
Lieut. Colonel.  
A.A. & Q.M.C., M.D. No. 6.

---

DO NOT LEAVE LIGHTS BURNING WHEN NOT NECESSARY. TURN OFF  
LIGHTS NOT IN USE AT EVERY OPPORTUNITY.

LIGHT AND WATER COST MONEY. WASTEFUL USE MEANS SO MUCH LESS  
MONEY TO HELP OTHERS.

## Endnotes

## Narrative

1. Canada Public Archives (hereafter cited as PAC), RG 24, Vol. 6369, 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906.
2. Novascotian, (Halifax), 17 November 1905, p. 11; "Halifax Garrison Now in Hands of Canadian Militia Department". Morning Chronicle, 24 November 1905.
3. "Royal Engineers Sail for Home", Nova Scotian and Weekly Chronicle, 9 March 1906, p.7.
4. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6553, HQ 856-2-1, Nominal Roll of W.O.s, N.C.Os and Men Imperial Forces stationed at Halifax, N.S. who have transferred to Canadian Permanent Force, [15 June 1906].
5. Canada. Parliament, Sessional Papers, (Ottawa: King's Printer, 1909), Vol. XLIV, no. 19, Annual Report of the Militia Council for the Fiscal Year Ending March 31, 1909.
6. Report of the Department of National Defence for the Fiscal Year Ending March 31, 1923, Sessional Papers, XVII, p. 5.
7. About Halifax, Nova Scotia, (Halifax: Board of Trade, 1906), p. 12; Ibid., 1908.
8. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, CRCA. Suggestions, [1915].
9. Ibid., Thacker to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 1 Oct. 1914.
10. Department of National Defence, Directorate of History, (hereafter cited as DND DHIST.) 382.003 (D1), Major General Sir William Otter, Internment Operations, 1914-1920. (Ottawa: King's Printer, 1921), p. 5.
11. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6-73-2-1, Inventory of articles of Barrack equipment and Bedding issued from Barrack Stores on 8th September 1914, to Citadel, to accommodate 50 Prisoners of War, 11 Sept. 1914.
12. Ibid., Major to Major W. E. Thompson, 28 Nov. 1914.

13. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, CRCA. Suggestions [1915]; Ibid, Major to AD of S & T, 9 Jan. 1915; Ibid., Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914; Ibid., Palmer, 16 Feb. 1915.
14. Ibid., Thacker to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 1 Oct. 1914.
15. Ibid., Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914; Ibid., CRCA Suggestions, [1915].
16. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4542, Adams to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 3 Feb. 1915; Ibid., Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry assembled at Citadel, Halifax, N.S. on the 29th Day of January at 2 P.M. by order of Maj.-Gen. R. W. Rutherford, G.O.C. 6th Div., for the purpose of Investigating the Escape of Prisoners of War. (Hereafter cited as Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry).
17. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Major to C.R.C.A., 12 Feb. 1915; Ibid., Thacker to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 13 Feb. 1915; Ibid., Capt. to D.O.1, 13 March 1915.
18. Ibid., Major General to Secretary, Militia Council, 18 March 1915; Adjutant General to G.O.C., 6th Division, 11 April 1915; Ibid., Otter to G.O.C., 15 April 1915.
19. Ibid., Lt. Col. to A.D. of S & T, 30 April 1915.
20. Ibid., CRCA's suggestions, [1915]; Ibid., Lt.-Col. Murphy to CRCE, 30 April 1915; Ibid., Palmer, 5 May 1915.
21. Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex (hereafter cited as HDC), Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - site plan, J.J. Young, 26 Feb. 1916.
22. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Benoit to D.O.1, 28 June 1915; Ibid., Stuart, 29 June 1915; Ibid., Adams to A.A.G., 25 May 1915.
23. Ibid., G.O.C. 6th Division to G.O.C. Internment Operations, 30 August 1915.
24. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Lieut. Rideout to Lt. Col. Thompson, 26 April 1915; Ibid., Adams to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 15 July 1915.
25. Ibid., Capt. to D.A.A. & Q.M.G., 22 May 1915; Ibid., Major-General to G.O.C., Internment Operations, 23 July 1915; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - site plan, 26 Feb. 1916.
26. Ibid., Adams to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Halifax [May 1915].
27. Ibid., Hamburg-American Line to William Roche, 21 Oct. 1914.
28. Gilbert Tucker, The Naval Service of Canada, Vol. I, (Ottawa: King's Printer, 1952).

29. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Frank Schmidt, 24 Nov. 1914.
30. ~~Ibid.~~, MacCleave to Supt. Detention Barrack, 21 Nov. 1914.
31. ~~Ibid.~~, Vol. 4542, Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry, pp. 3-4.
32. Phyllis Blakeley, "Trotsky in Halifax", The Atlantic Advocate, Vol. 55, No. 3, (Nov. 1964), pp. 42-48.
33. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, O Walkert to Gen. Ruthford, 20 Oct. 1914; ~~Ibid.~~, O. Walker to Deputy Adjutant General, 26 Oct. 1914.
34. DND, DHIST, 382-003(D1), Internment Operations 1914-1920, p.7.
35. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Gibson to Supt., Detention Barrack, 2 Nov. 1914.
36. ~~Ibid.~~, Gibson to Supt., Detention Barrack, 6 Nov. 1914.
37. Canada. Department of Militia and Defence. Report of the Halifax Military Lands Board, 1915, (Ottawa: King's Printer, 1916), pp. 72-74.
38. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, File 1376-1 - V. 1, Constantine to Secretary DND, 19 Dec. 1932.
39. "Bid Farewell to Citadel," Halifax Mail, 18 Dec. 1931, p. 1; Sydney Post, 23 Dec. 1931, p. 7.
40. Halifax Mail, 1 Dec. 1931, p. 3; Halifax Mail, 5 Dec. 1931, p. 3; Halifax Mail, 8 Dec. 1931, pp. 3 & 6; Halifax Mail, 12 Dec. 1931, p. 3. Compare with 1927 photo. (PAC, PA87761, Citadel Gates at Halifax, 8 Oct. 1927).
41. ~~Ibid.~~, 18 Dec. 1931, p. 1; HDC, Ordnance Lands Photo, Halifax Citadel, 1933.
42. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Secretary DND, 18 Oct. 1932.
43. ~~Ibid.~~, Minshull to Mayor, 12 Nov. 1932.
44. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Lt.-Col. Sparling to Secretary DND, 9 Sept. 1932; ~~Ibid.~~, Mayor to Minister of Pensions and National Health, 8 Sept., 1932; ~~Ibid.~~, Telegram, D.O.C. MD 6 to Secretary DND, 19 Sept. 1932.
45. ~~Ibid.~~, Telegram, Adjutant-General to D.O.C. MD 6, 20 Sept. 1932; ~~Ibid.~~, D.O.C. MD No. 6 to Mayor, Premier, Secretary of Halifax Board of Trade, 20 Sept. 1932; ~~Ibid.~~, Major-General Adjutant-General to D.O.C. MD 6, 21 Sept. 1932.
46. ~~Ibid.~~, Mayor Thompson to D.O.C., M.D. No. t, 4 Oct. 1932.
47. ~~Ibid.~~, Constantine to Mayor, Premier, Secretary of Halifax Board of



- Trade, 5 Oct. 1932.
48. Ibid., Director of Engineer Services to D.O.C., M.D. No. 6, 8 Oct. 1932.
  49. Ibid., Constantine to Secretary DND, 3 Nov. 1932; Ibid., Employment Service of Canada to Premier Harrington, 29 Nov. 1932.
  50. Ibid., Telegram, D.O.C. MD 6 to QMG, 1 Nov. 1932; Ibid., Constantine to Secretary DND, 3 Nov. 1932.
  51. Ibid., Employment Service of Canada to Premier Harrington, 29 Nov. 1932.
  52. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3053, D.O.C. MD No. 6 to Secretary DND, 15 May 1934; Ibid., Cotter to Secretary DND, 3 Feb. 1934.
  53. Ibid., Mayor to D.O.C., MD No. 6, 22 July 1933; Ibid., D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 31 July 1933; Ibid., Lt. Col. Sparling to Secretary DND, 6 Sept. 1933.
  54. Ibid., Cotter to Secretary DND, 3 Feb. 1934.
  55. Ibid., D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 15 May 1934.
  56. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Minshull to Mayor, 20 Nov. 1932; Ibid., D.O.C. MD 6 to Secretary DND, 25 Oct. 1932; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, file 1376-11-1-v.3, McNaughton, 24 September 1934, Appendix IV.
  57. Ibid., Vol. 3052, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932; Ibid., Vol. 3053, Report of RCMP, 19 Jan. 1933.
  58. Ibid., Vol. 3053, Report of RCMP, 15 May 1933.
  59. Halifax Mail, 8 May 1935.
  60. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, DOC to Secretary DND, 3 Jan. 1933; Ibid., Adjutant General to D.O.C., 3 Jan. 1933; Ibid., D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 4 Jan. 1933; Ibid., D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 5 Jan. 1933; Ibid., Vol. 3052, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932.
  61. "Relief Camp Are Back at Work", Halifax Mail, 19 March 1935, p. 3.
  62. "Talk of March Unheard at Local Camps", Halifax Mail, 31 May 1935.
  63. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932; Ibid., Vol. 3053, Report of Stipendiary Magistrate in Re. the Death of the Late David Frederick Davis, known Generally as Clarence Davis Late of the City of Halifax, 11 April 1933.
  64. Ibid., Vol. 3052, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932.
  65. Ibid., Vol. 3052, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 27 Oct. 1932.

66. Ibid., Vol. 3056, DOC to Secretary DND, 12 June 1936. Monthly Progress Report - May U.R.P. No. 1, Halifax, N.S.
67. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, DOC to Secretary DND, 18 Oct. 1932; Ibid., Vol. 3053, DOC to Secretary DND, 1 May 1936; Ibid., 22 June 1936; Ibid., Plan to accompany Progress Report, 31 July 1933; HDC, Ordnance Lands Photo, Photo of driveway, 1933.
68. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, DOC to Secretary DND, 27 Oct. 1932.
69. Ibid., DOC, MD No. 6 to QMG, 8 Nov. 1932.
70. Ibid., DOC to Secretary DND, 23 Nov. 1932.
71. Ibid., D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 9 Nov. 1932.
72. Ibid., Vol. 3053, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, 11 Feb. 1935.
73. Ibid., Extract from C.G.S. Memorandum dated 26 July 1934.
74. Ibid., QM to DOC, 30 July 1934.
75. Ibid., Schedule of priority of work to be undertaken at the Citadel, 13 August 1934.
76. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Harvey to Harkin, 7 Dec. 1935.
77. "Not a War-Torn Fort in Spain but Halifax Citadel," (photo), Halifax Mail, 19 June 1937, p. 1.
78. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, D.O.C. to Secretary DND, Monthly Progress Report - May, 12 June 1936.
79. Ibid., Vol. 3053, File 1376-11-1-v.3, Hertzberg to Secretary DND, 22 April 1936.
80. Ibid.
81. Ibid., Vol. 3052, Rowall to Desbarats, 20 Sept. 1932.
82. Ibid., Col. D.E.S. to QMG, 10 June 1936; Ibid., LaFleche to Deputy Minister of the Interior, 10 June 1936.
83. IAND, HQHC 2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
84. Ibid., Memo to Mr. Wardle, 7 August 1936; Ibid., Memorandum: Re: Halifax Citadel, N.A. Sparks (hereafter cited as Sparks memo), 24 Nov. 1936.
85. Ibid., PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, Hertzberg to Secretary DND, 4 June 1936; Ibid., Major to QMC, 6 July 1936.
86. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, Constantine to D.O.C., 30 Dec. 1936.
87. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Memo to Mr. Wardle, 7 August 1937.
88. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Jackson to Gibson, 17 Dec. 1937.

89. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3053, Hertzberg to Secretary DND, 3 June 1937; PAC, RG 24, C9, Vol. 3053, HQ1376-11-1-v.4, Hertzberg to Secretary DND, 24 March 1937.
90. "People Should Unite to Save Citadel Hill from Becoming Building Lots," Halifax Mail, July 1936. Clipping in HQ file HC2, Vol. 1.
91. "Time for Planning", Halifax Mail; 12 March 1937, p. 4; "Ottawa Asked to Act," Halifax Mail, 2 June 1937; "All Organizations Should Join in Demand Ottawa Give Attention to Citadel," Halifax Mail, 4 June 1937, p. 3; "Large Sums Expended at Quebec; Citadel at Halifax Minus Needed Attention," Halifax Mail, 5 June 1937, pp. 3, 9; "Repairs to Citadel Roadways Urgent Need," Halifax Mail, 15 June 1937, p. 1; "Not a War-Torn-Fort in Spain but Halifax Citadel," Halifax Mail, 19 June 1937, p. 1; "Crumbling Moat Walls at Citadel A Disgrace," Halifax Mail, 21 June 1937, p. 3; "Save the Citadel," Halifax Mail, 25 June 1937, p. 1.
92. "Historic Citadel, Lure to Tourists, Neglected Delay in Repairs of Fort is Scored," Halifax Mail, 2 April 1937, p. 3; "Citadel Hill Advertised as a Lure to Tourist Visitors Halifax Fort, Crowning Halifax, Allowed to be Disgraceful Ruin Scene," Halifax Mail, 29 June 1937, p. 3.
93. "A National Monument," Halifax Mail, 17 June 1937, p. 1.
94. "Ottawa Asked to Act," Halifax Mail, 2 June 1937; PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Gordon Isnor to Crerar, 31 May 1938.
95. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File HQ73-11-5 vol. 1, Report on work toward restoration of the Citadel, Rice, 23 April 1939; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1 & 2. Weekly Progress Reports 1-24, 15 Oct. 1938 - 31 March 1939, Weekly Progress Reports 1-39, 27 May 1939 - 17 Feb. 1940.
96. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Precis for the Clerk of the Privy Council, 25 April 1939; PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File HQ 73-11-5 vol. 1, Brown to District Treasury Office, 27 Sept. 1938; Ibid., Brown to Gibson, 22 March 1939.
97. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File HQ 73-11-5-v.1, Schmidlin to Gerald H. Brown, 30 Oct. 1939; PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Williamson to Gibson, 4 June 1938.
98. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File HQ 73-11-5-v.1, Press Notice, Dept. of National Defence, 23 Sept. 1938.
99. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Cromanty Memorandum to Williamson, 15 Feb. 1940.

100. Ibid.
101. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File HQ73-11-5-v.1, Boak to Secretary DND, 23 July 1938.
102. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, clipping of Halifax Mail, 27 April 1939.
103. Ibid.; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1-2, Weekly Progress Reports 1-24, 15 Oct. 1938 to 31 March 1939; Weekly Progress Reports 1-39, 27 May 1939 to 17 Feb. 1940.
104. HDC, Officers living Quarters - Citadel Hill, Halifax, AC Watson, 11 Jan. 1940; Ibid., Foundation plan of Mess, 300 men, Citadel Hill, 5 Jan. 1940; Ibid., untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
105. Ibid., untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
106. DND, DHIST, 112,3H1.009(D152), Notes on the Evolution of R.A. Park ... Canadian Militia Artillery Units Permanently Located at Halifax 1860 - 1965.
107. Ibid., Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944; HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
108. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940; Ibid., Foundation plan of mess, 300 men, Citadel Hill, 5 Jan. 1940; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Foster to Army HQ, 3 Oct. 1947.
109. "Halifax as a Fortress," The Maritime Advocate and Busy East, Vol. 31, no. 7, (Feb. 1941), pp. 17-19.
110. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Connolly to D.E.O., MD No. 6, 15 Jan. 1942; Ibid., Quartermaster to D.O.C. MD 6, 26 Jan. 1942; Ibid., Proceedings of a Board of Officers assembled at Citadel Hill, Halifax, N.S., on the 10th Day of December 1942 by order of (W. W. Foster) Brigadier, D.O.C., MD No. 6 for the purpose of handing over all buildings from A 23 C & A/A. Training Center to No. 1 Works Coy. R.C.E.
111. HDC, G.O.R. in "B" Magazine Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944.
112. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Board of Officers-Accommodation. Gallaher to Capt., R.C.E., No. 6 E.S. & W. Coy to D.S. & T.O., MD No. 6, 14 March 1945.
113. Ibid., Stewart to Secretary DND, 17 Jan. 1946.

114. Ibid., Telegram, Engineers 6 to Director of Accommodation and Fire Prevention, [circa 1946].
115. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Gibson, 23 June 1947; DND, DHIST, 345.009 (D101), QMG, Ottawa, to D.O.C., MD No. 6, 27 Dec. 1945.
116. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Dept. of Resources and Development. Re-Halifax Citadel, nd. [circa 1949].
117. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Isnor to Minister of Defence, 23 Dec. 1946.
118. Ibid., Minister of Defence to Isnor, 3 Jan. 1947; Ibid., Gibson to A.HQ., 17 Jan. 1947.
119. Ibid., Gibson to Army HQ, 30 May 1947.
120. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Memorandum for the Deputy Minister. Re-Halifax Citadel. Gibson, 23 June 1947; "Turning Over Citadel to City Pressed," Halifax Mail, 24 June 1947, p. 10.
121. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Carson to Ahern, 29 July 1947.
122. "Wants 99-year Lease, Clear Title to Citadel Hill," Halifax Mail, 3 July 1947, p. 1. "To Reject Proposed Agreement," Halifax Mail, 1 May 1948; "City Gives Ultimatum on Citadel," Halifax Mail, 18 May 1948, p. 3; "City Seeks Agreement on Citadel," Halifax Mail, 27 Oct. 1948, p. 1; "Tells Terms of Possible Citadel Lease," Halifax Mail, p. 16; Files of Halifax Chronicle Herald and Mail Star office, "Ottawa Will Turn Over Citadel to City," 7 July 1948; "Attempting to Reach Agreement" Halifax Mail Star, 17 Jan. 1949, p. 3.
123. "To Reject Proposed Agreement," Halifax Mail, 1 May 1948, p. 1; "Private Meeting Dealing with Citadel Hill Future," Halifax Mail, 6 July 1948, p. 1.
124. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), MacDonald to A.A. & QMG, 14 April 1947.
125. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 6369, File HQ 73-11-5 vol. 2, Gibson to Army HQ, 17 Jan. 1947.
126. Undated clipping from files of Halifax Chronicle Herald and Mail Star office, circa 1947.
127. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Ahern to Minister of Mines and Resources, 2 Aug. 1948, "To reject Proposed Agreement," Halifax Mail, 1 May 1948, p. 1.
128. Halifax Mail Star, 16 June 1949, p. 11.
129. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Dickey to Minister of Resources and Development,

- 29 May 1950.
130. Ibid., London to Minister of Resources and Development, 2 June 1950.
131. Ibid., Private Secretary, Minister of Resources and Development to Mayor, 10 July 1950.
132. Lt. Col. B. H. Darwin et al," Report on Restoration of the Halifax Citadel (Fort George)," (hereafter cited as "Report on Restoration") Halifax, N.S., 28 Oct. 1950.
133. Ibid., p. 4.
134. Ibid., p. 5.
135. PAC, Massey Photo No. 43, 1950.
136. Ibid., Massey Photos No. 14, 20 and 25, 1950.
137. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Memorandum, Childe to Smart, 27 July 1951;  
Ibid., Borrett to Minister of Resources and Development, 1 Sept. 1951,  
p. 2.
138. Report. Royal Commission on National Development in the Arts, Letters and Sciences 1949-1951, Ottawa: Edmond Cloutier, 1951, pp. 350-351.
139. IAND, Parks Canada, Atlantic Regional Office, Realty Services, Halifax Citadel. Park Establishment No. 25, P.C. 2430, 16 May 1951.
140. Ibid., Park Establishment No. 26, PC 6728, 14 Dec. 1951.
141. Ibid., Park Establishment No. 32, PC 1956-1010, 5 July 1956.

## Endnotes

## Buildings On the Parade

1. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906, p. 62.
2. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel or Fort George - Ground Plan, (hereafter cited as Citadel Ground Plan), 1908.
3. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, D.A.A. and Q.M.G. to A.D. of S&T T. 6th Division, 9 Jan. 1915.
4. Ibid., CRCA Suggestions, [circa 1915].
5. Ibid., Lieut-Col. Thacker to Q.M.G., Halifax, 1 Oct. 1914.
6. Ibid., CRCA Suggestions [circa 1915].
7. Ibid., Capt. RCA for DAA & QMG, 22 May 1915; Ibid., Major Adams to A.A.G., 6th Division, 5 June 1915.
8. PAC, RG 24, C9, Vol. 3052, 1376-11-v.3 Brig. Constantine to Sect'y DND, 18 Oct. 1932; Ibid., 25 Oct. 1932; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1-v.3, Brig. Hertzberg to Sect'y DND, 27 May 1935; Ibid., Col. Schmidlin to D.O.C., 4 June 1935.
9. IAND, HQHC 2, Vol. 2, Weekly Progress Report No. 23, March 20 - 25, 1939.
10. Halifax Mail, 30 Sept. 1939.
11. Clipping from Halifax Mail Star Office files, [nd.].
12. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Col. Lawrence to D.O.C. [nd.]; Ibid., Capt. Millward to D.O.C., 4 Feb. 1942.
13. Ibid., DEO, MD 6 to Director of Works and Construction, DND, 2 March 1944.
14. HDC, Details - Cavalier Block - Citadel Hill, Halifax, N.S., front elevation, Queen, 20 Dec. 1945.
15. DND, DHIST, 345-009(D101), Stewart, D.O.C. to Sect'y DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
16. Clipping from Halifax Mail Star Office files, nd.

17. "Report on Restoration", p. 5, Appendix A, pp. 16-17.
18. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
19. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel Ground Plan, Maj. Benoit, January 1922.
20. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks - Halifax, N.S., R.V. Hart, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, Benoit, 29 June 1925.
21. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
22. HDC, Citadel Grocery Bar, R.V. Hart, 21 March 1921; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
23. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Citadel Grocery Bar, 21 March 1921, HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
24. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924.
25. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
26. Ibid., January 1922.
27. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6 73-2-1, Major Adams to A.A.G. 6th Div., 25 May 1915; Ibid., Palmer 28 May 1915.
28. Ibid., G.O.C., 6th Division to G.O.C., Internment Operations, 30 August 1915.
29. Ibid., Lt.-Col. Murphy to CRCE, 30 April 1915; Ibid., Palmer, 5 May 1915.
30. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922.
31. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924.
32. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Minshull to Mayor, 20 November 1932.
33. Ibid., Constantine to Secretary, DND, 25 Oct. 1932.
34. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
35. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922.
36. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924.
37. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
38. Ibid, HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
39. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Oct. 1932; PAC, DND, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1 [1915]; HDC, Vocational Training School drawing, Queen, Details - Cavalier Block - Citadel Hill, Front elevation and Floor Plan, 20 Dec. 1945.
40. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922.



41. Ibid.
42. Ibid.
43. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
44. HDC, Cavalier, Citadel - Attic plan showing proposed accommodation, Benoit, 25 May 1925.
45. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Contantine to Secretary DND, 18 Oct. 1932; Ibid., DES to QMG, 21 Oct. 1932.
46. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Weekly Progress Report, February and March of 1939.
47. PAC, DND, RG 24, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, Palmer, 29 June 1915.
48. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
49. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, [1915]; Ibid., Palmer, 29 June 1915.
50. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
51. Ibid., HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
52. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, [1915].
53. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
54. Ibid., 1908.
55. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, Benoit, 28 June 1915; Ibid., Palmer, 29 June 1915; Major General to G.O.C. Internment Operations, 5 July 1915; Ibid., Major to CRCE, 16 July 1915; Ibid., Major Adams to A.A.G. 6th Division, 5 June 1915.
56. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922; HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
57. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
58. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Weekly Progress Report No. 6, 19 November 1938.
59. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
60. HDC, Details - Cavalier Block - Citadel Hill, front elevation, 20 Dec. 1945.
61. PAC, PA-87761, The Citadel Gates in Halifax, N.S., 8 Oct. 1927; IAND, HQHC, 2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 November 1936, Appendix 3, photo 8.
62. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, Progress Report Plan, 30 April 1936.

63. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936; Ibid., LaFleche, 29 June 1936.
64. "Report on Restoration", p. 17.
65. HDC, Vocational Training School drawing, Cavalier Block - Citadel Hill, Queen, West Elevation, 1945.
66. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922.
67. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1, 28 June 1915; Ibid., Palmer, 29 June 1915.
68. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924; DND, Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925.
69. HDC, Cavalier Block - Citadel Hill, rear elevation, 1945.
70. PAC, Massey Photo No. 25, 1950.
71. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924.
72. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Weekly Progress Reports, February and March of 1939.
73. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 17 Oct. 1924.
74. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, 28 June 1915; Ibid., G.O.C. 6th Division to G.O.C., Internment Operations, 23 July 1915.
75. HDC, Cavalier, Citadel - Attic plan, 25 May 1925.
76. HDC, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 9 Oct. 1924.
77. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Weekly Progress Reports - August, 1939.
78. Ibid, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
79. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, MD 6, 73-2-1. CRCA Suggestions [1915]; DND, Citadel - Cavalier Barracks, 29 June 1925; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Citadel Ground Plan, Oct. 1932.
80. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908.
81. PAC, DND, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906, p. 62.
82. Report of the Halifax Military Lands Board, 1915, Ottawa, J. de L. Taché, Printer to the King's Most Excellent Majesty, 1916, p. 73.
83. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Constantine to the Mayor, the Premier and the Halifax Board of Trade, 20 Sept. 1932; Ibid., Constantine to Secretary, DND, 18 Oct. 1932.
84. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, File 1376-11-1-v.3, Hertzberg

- to Secretary DND, 27 May 1935; Ibid., Col. Schmidlin to D.O.C., 4 June 1935.
85. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
  86. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, File 1376-11-1-v.3, Hertzberg to Secretary DND, 24 March 1937.
  87. HDC, Citadel - brick block - Halifax, N.S. - proposed accommodation for R.C.A.F., 4 Oct. 1938.
  88. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Proceedings of a Board of Officers assembled at Citadel Hill, Halifax, N.S. on the 10th Day of December, 1942 by order of (W.W. Foster) Brigadier, D.O.C., M.D. No. 6 for the purpose of handing over all buildings from A23C and A/A Training Center to No. 1 Works Coy, R.C.E. 14 Dec. 1942; Ibid., 3 Nov. 1943.
  89. Ibid., Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944.
  90. Ibid., Gallaher to D.S. & T.O., MD No. 6, 14 March 1945.
  91. Ibid., Stewart to Secretary DND, 17 Jan. 1946; Ibid., telegram 291200P, Engineers 6 to Director of Accommodation and Fire Prevention, DND, [nd.].
  92. Ibid., Gibson to Army Headquarters, 29 July 1947.
  93. Clipping from Halifax Mail Star filed, [nd.].
  94. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
  95. Ibid., 29 July 1947; HDC, Plan R.C.A. New Barracks and recreations est B. - Citadel, S. Clarke and others, (hereafter cited as RCA New Barracks), 24 April 1947.
  96. Ibid., Carson to Headquarters, Eastern Command, 20 Sept. 1947.
  97. Ibid., Foster to Army Headquarters, DND, 4 Oct. 1947.
  98. "Report on Restoration", p. 5.
  99. "Citadel Hill to Become National Historic Site", Halifax Chronicle-Herald, 11 May 1951.
  100. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Report of Col. Childe, 11 July 1951; Ibid., Borrett to Minister of Resources and Development, 1 Sept. 1951. Childe seems to be mistaken that there was a caretaker in each of the two barracks.
  101. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Record plans, 1 May 1901; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - New Barracks - Record Plan, Young, 27 July 1914; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; HDC, Plan RCA New Barracks, 24 April 1947.

102. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Record plans of barracks for 105 men, Waghorn and others, 1 May 1901.
103. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Men's Block, Citadel - Ground floor plan, circa 1905; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - New Barracks - Record plan, Young, 27 July 1914.
104. PAC, Massey Photos No. 18, 20 and 21, 1950.
105. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Record plan of gunshed for 6 15 Pr. B.L. guns and limbers, (hereafter cited as Record plan of gunshed) 1904.
106. PAC, DND, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906, p. 62.
107. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Brig. Gibson to Secretary, DND, 28 Oct. 1946.
108. HDC, Citadel Block plan, 1907; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., Jan. 1922; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Gunshed - Record plan, 1913; HDC, Citadel - site plan, 26 Feb. 1916.
109. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, 18 Oct. 1932.
110. PAC, DND, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Hertzberg to Secretary, DND, 22 April 1936; IAND, PHQ, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
111. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Gibson to Secretary, DND, 28 Oct. 1946.
112. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
113. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Stewart to Secretary, DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
114. Ibid., Roy to D.E.O., MD No. 6, 13 Feb. 1946; Ibid., Stewart to Secretary DND, 22 Feb. 1946.
115. Ibid., Gibson to Secretary DND, 28 Oct. 1946.
116. Ibid., Foster to Army HQ, 17 July 1947.
117. "Report on Restoration", p. 5.
118. HDC, Record plan of gunshed, 1904; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, Jan. 1922; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Gunshed - Record plan, 1913.
119. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - new gunshed, Linsel and others, 13 Feb. 1902.
120. HDC, Record plan of gunshed, 1904.
121. HDC, Citadel - Gunshed - Record plan, 1913.
122. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Renovation of Gun Shed, nd.; Ibid., Stewart

- to Secretary DND, 22 Feb. 1946; Ibid., Gibson to Secretary DND, Oct. 1946.
123. PAC, Massey Photo No. 21, 1950.
124. HDC, Citadel - Gunshed - Record plan, 1913.
125. DND, DHIST, 345-009 (D101), Renovation of Gun Shed, nd.; Stewart, 22 Feb. 1946; Ibid., Gibson, 28 Oct. 1946; Ibid., Plan of proposed alterations - gunshed, 28 Oct. 1946.
126. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - new gunshed, 13 Feb. 1902; HDC, Record plan of gunshed, 1904; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., 1922; HDC, Citadel - Gunshed - Record plan, 1913; DND, DHIST, 345-009(D101), Plan of proposed alterations - gunshed, 28 Oct. 1946.
127. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel Record plans of canteen (hereafter cited as Canteen record plans), Linsel and others, 22 August 1902; Ibid., 25 August 1902.
128. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - site plan, J.J. Young, 26 Feb. 1916; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, Jan 1922; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - RA park and south barracks, 3 July 1925; HDC, Plumbing, heating and electrical layout, Canteen building - Citadel, L.M. Harrison, 23 Dec. 1944.
129. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Secretary DND, 18 Oct. 1932.
130. Ibid.; Memo to QMG, 21 Oct. 1932; Ibid., Constantine to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932; Ibid., Alderman Minshull, 20 Nov. 1932.
131. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
132. DND, DHIST, 345-009(D101), Lt.-Col. Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944.
133. HDC, Revisions and detail - Officers and Sergeants Messes - Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 7 July 1945.
134. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Stewart to Secretary DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
135. Ibid., Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
136. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Deputy Minister of National Defence to Deputy Minister of Resources and Development, 18 April 1951.
137. "Report on Restoration", p. 7, Appendix A - p. 7.
138. The dimensions vary on the plans. They are 68 ft, 6 in. by 42 ft.

- on the 1902 plan, 62 ft. 6 in. by 42 ft. on the 1913 plan, and 67 ft. by 42 ft. 6 in. on the 1945 plan. HDC, Proposed canteen on site of north magazine, site plan, etc., Wilkinson, 2 Sept. 1900; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel Record plans, August 1902; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Ground Floor Plan - Citadel Canteen, traced by Saxton and others, 9 April 1913; HDC, Revisions and detail - Officers and Sergeants Messes - Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 7 July 1945.
139. HDC, Canteen record plans, 22 Oct. 1902; HDC, Revisions and detail - Officers and Sergeants Messes - Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 7 July 1945; PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
140. HDC, Canteen record plans, 22 and 25 August 1902; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Ground Floor Plan - Citadel Canteen, 9 April 1913; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel (Canteen Building) recreation room, R.V. Hart, 22 Sept. 1921.
141. HDC, Plumbing, heating and electrical layout, Canteen building - Citadel, 23 Dec. 1944; HDC, Revisions and details - Officers and Sergeants Messes - Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 7 July 1945.
142. HDC, Citadel record plans, 22 and 25 August 1902; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Halifax, N.S. Ground Floor Plan - Citadel Canteen, 9 April 1913.
143. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1922.
144. HDC, Plumbing, heating and electrical layout, Canteen Building - Citadel, 23 Dec. 1944.
145. HDC, Revisions and detail - Officers and Sergeants Messes - Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 7 July 1945.
146. HDC, Citadel Record Plans, 25 August 1902; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel (Canteen Building) recreation room, 22 Sept. 1921; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, Jan. 1922.
147. HDC, Citadel Record Plans, 22 and 25 August 1902; PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
148. HDC, Halifax Citadel, N.S. - Aerial photograph, 7 Sept. 1923; DND, C.F.B. Rockcliffe, REA 253-16, 1942.
149. PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
150. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907.
151. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Lt.-Col. Thacker to D.A.A. & QMG, 2 Oct. 1914.
152. PAC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.

153. DND, DHIST, 112.3H1.009(D152), Notes on the Evolution of R.A. Park. Names of British Artillery Units That Served in Halifax, p. 19; HDC, G.O.R. in "B" Magazine. Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943.
154. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944.
155. Ibid., Stewart to Secretary, DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
156. Ibid., Gibson to AHQ, 30 May 1947; IAND HQHC2, Vol. 1, La Fleche, 29 July 1936.
157. "Report on Restoration", p. 5.
158. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Smart to Deputy Minister, 7 Sept. 1951.
159. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 6369, HQ 73-11-5, Vol. 1, 27 Sept. 1923.
160. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908.
161. HDC, G.O.R. in "B" Magazine, Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943.
162. HDC, Lavatories G.O.R. - Citadel Hill, Traced by A.L.F., 12 July 1943.
163. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 16; PAC, Massey Photos No. 16 and 20, 1950.
164. HDC, Officers living Quarters - Citadel Hill, Halifax, A.C. Watson, 11 Jan. 1940.
165. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Stewart to Secretary, DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
166. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Foster to Army HQ, 3 Oct. 1947; Ibid., Works and Accommodation, 17 Jan. 1947.
167. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940; HDC, Foundation plan of Mess, 300 men, Citadel Hill, 5 Jan. 1940; DND, CFB Rockcliffe, REA 413-11, 1941.
168. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Chetwynd to D.O.C. MD 6, 13 Jan. 1944; Ibid., Craig to Secretary DND, 4 Dec. 1943; Ibid., 3 Nov. 1943.
169. Ibid., Lt.-Col. Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, 2 March 1944.
170. Ibid., Capt. Gallaher to D.S.O. to T.O., 14 March 1945.
171. Ibid., Stewart to Secretary DND, 17 Jan. 1946.
172. Ibid., Gibson to Army HQ, 17 Jan. 1947; Ibid., Foster to Army HQ, 3 Oct. 1947.
173. HDC, DND Aerial of Halifax Citadel, 1950.
174. HDC, Foundation plan of Mess, 300 men, Citadel Hill, 5 Jan. 1940; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Plan of O.R.'s Mess to accompany letter of

- C.S. Craig, 4 Dec. 1943.
175. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
176. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Plan of O.R.'s Mess to accompany letter of C.S. Craig, 4 Dec. 1943.
177. Ibid., Foster to Army HQ, 3 Oct. 1947.
178. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940; DND, C.F.B. Rockcliffe, REA 413-24, 1941; DND, C.F.B. Rockcliffe REA 253-16, 1942.
179. Halifax Mail Star, 16 June 1949, p. 11; Review of "Halifax 1949" Halifax Mail Star, 5 July 1949, p. 3; Halifax Mail Star, 20 June 1949, p. 19.
180. Halifax Mail Star, 16 June 1949, p. 11.
181. PAC, Massey Photo Nos. 3, 4 and 11, 1950.
182. PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, Report of Col. Childe, 27 July 1951.
183. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940; DND, C.F.B. Rookcliffe, REA 413-24, 1941.



## Endnotes

## Buildings on the Ramparts

1. "Time Ball at Halifax Citadel," Nova Scotian and Weekly Chronicle, 11 March 1904, p. 9; "Time Ball on Citadel," Nova Scotian and Weekly Chronicle, 5 August 1904, p. 7.
2. Belchers' Farmers' Almanac for the Maritime Provinces, (hereafter cited as Belcher's Almanac.), (Halifax: McAlpine Publishing Co. Ltd., 1905), p. 292.
3. "Time Ball is Now Complete", Morning Chronicle, 31 July 1908, p. 7.
4. Ibid.; Belcher's Almanac, 1909-1925, (Halifax: Royal Print & Litho Ltd.).
5. Ibid.; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D257), Annual Reports on Lettings, Permits and Encroachments in Halifax Garrison, April 1925 to April 1935; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D61), Binders re reports on Lettings Permits and Encroachments, Halifax Garrison d. 1924/32; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 15 February 1947; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Andrew Thomson to District Treasury Officer, 7 January 1947; "Time Ball is Now Complete," Morning Chronicle, 31 July 1908, p. 7.
6. HDC, untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920; DND, DHIST, 345.009 (D101), untitled plan of Citadel, 26 May 1947.
7. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 15 February 1947.
8. Belcher's Almanac, 1905, p. 292; Ibid., 1925, p. 305.
9. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson for G.O.C. Eastern Command to Army Headquarters, DND, Ottawa, 15 February 1947; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Director of Works and Accommodation to Headquarters, Eastern Command, 16 August 1947.
10. "Report on Restoration," p. 5, Appendix A, p. 18.
11. "Timeball Tower Restored," Halifax Mail Star, 6 July 1956, p. 1.
12. HDC, DND Aerial: Halifax Citadel, circa 1954.

13. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; PAC, PA 87819, "The Citadel Walls in Halifax, Nova Scotia" (hereafter cited as Citadel Walls), 8 Oct. 1927; IANØ, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
14. "Time Ball is Now Complete," Morning Chronicle, 31 July 1908, p. 7; HDC, untitled plan of signal station, Citadel Hill, R. Hart and others, 22 May 1920; PAC, Massey Photo No. 14, 1950.
15. R.F. Stuart, "The Meteorological Service," Canadian Magazine, Vol. 35, No. 3, (July, 1910), p. 200; HDC, Untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920; PAC, PA 87819, Citadel Walls, 8 Oct. 1927; Halifax Mail, 20 June 1934, p. 9.
16. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906, p. 62.
17. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, Jan. 1922; HDC, DND Aerial photograph of Citadel from 1500 ft., 7 Sept. 1923. The building is shown on a 1924 trace which probably is incorrect, as it seems to be based on a 1922 plan. (HDC, The Citadel or Fort George Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., July 1924).
18. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Signaling station, record plan, C. Hechler, 23 Oct. 1914.
19. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
20. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., January 1906, p. 62.
21. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
22. HDC, Plan Proposed Accommodation for Signal Station Citadel, (hereafter cited as Proposed Signal Station), D.F. Saxton and others, 25 Oct. 1916; HDC, untitled plan of Signal Station, R. Hart and others, 22 May 1920.
23. George Munro, "Halifax Citadel. Signal Mast, 1827 - 1938," Vol. 1, manuscript on file, [nd.], p. 6; Belcher's Almanac, 1923, p. 315; Belcher's Almanac, 1924, p. 312. The personnel of the station were military in 1923 and civilian in 1924.
24. "Shift Signal Station to Tower," Halifax Mail, 29 Jan. 1937, p. 13,
25. Belcher's Almanac.
26. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Andrew Thomson, Controller, Dept. of

- Transport to District Treasury Officer, MD 6, 7 Jan. 1947.
27. "May Vacate Station Atop Citadel Hill," Halifax Mail, 3 March 1934.
  28. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
  29. "Shift Signal Station to Tower," Halifax Mail, 29 Jan. 1937, p. 13.
  30. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Andrew Thomson to District Treasury Officer, MD 6, 7 Jan. 1947.
  31. HDC, untitled plan of Halifax Citadel, circa 1940.
  32. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Lt. Col. Ahern to Director of Works and Construction, DND, 2 March 1944.
  33. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Stewart to Sect'y DND, Ottawa, 17 Jan. 1946.
  34. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Untitled plan of areas to be retained in event of transfer of Citadel. 26 May 1947.
  35. Ibid.; PAC, RG 22, Vol. 216, "Proposed Transfer - Citadel at Halifax," Drury to General Young, 18 April 1951.
  36. "Report on Restoration," p. 5.
  37. "Former Signal Station Goes, Time Ball Remains," Halifax Mail Star, 2 Oct. 1951, pp. 1, 8.
  38. PANS, Statutes of Nova Scotia, 1859, cap. 64; Halifax Mail Star, 9 December 1960, p. 7; Halifax Mail Star, 15 Feb. 1961, p. 3.
  39. HDC, Proposed Accommodation for Signal Station Citadel, 25 Oct., 1916.
  40. HDC, Proposed Accommodation for Signal Station, 25 Oct. 1916; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; HDC, The Citadel or Fort George, Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., July 1924; PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, The Citadel or Fort George, Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., Oct. 1932.
  41. HDC, Proposed Signal Station, 25 Oct. 1916; PAC, PA-87819, Citadel Walls, 8 Oct. 1927; PAC, PA 48378, Dept. of Interior coll., Citadel and Moat at Halifax, N.S., 1920s.
  42. HDC, Proposed Signal Station, 25 Oct. 1916; HEC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; HDC, The Citadel or Fort George Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S. July 1924.
  43. HDC, Proposed Signal Station, 25 Oct. 1916; HDC, untitled plan of Signal Station, R. Hart and others, 22 May 1920; PAC, PA-87819, Citadel Walls, 8 Oct. 1927.
  44. HDC, Ordnance Land Photo, No. 293-33, Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 1933; DND, C.F.B. Rockcliffe REA 413-11, aerial photo, Halifax Citadel,

- N.S., 1941.
45. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; Nova Scotia Museum No. 6713, 4 July 1928; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 November 1936; PAC, Massey Photos No. 14 and 16, 1950.
  46. HDC, Untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920; PAC, PA-87819, Citadel Walls, 8 Oct. 1927.
  47. PAC, Massey Photo No. 16, 1950.
  48. HDC, Citadel Block plan, 1907; Ibid., April 1908.
  49. HDC, Untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920.
  50. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908; Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
  51. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; HDC, "Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan", circa 1910; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922; HDC, The Citadel or Fort George Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., July 1924.
  52. HDC, Untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920.
  53. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; Ibid., April 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
  54. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
  55. Nova Scotia Museum No. 6205, The Citadel, 4 July 1928; HDC, Ordnance Lands Photo, Citadel No. 293-33, 1933; DND, CFB Rockcliffe, REA 413-11, 1941; PAC, Massey Photo No. 16, 1950.
  56. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Thomson to District Taxation Officer, MD No. 6, 7 Jan. 1947; PAC, C 70994, circa 1925.
  57. Ibid., Gibson for G.O.C., Eastern Command, to Army Headquarters, DND, 15 Feb. 1947.
  58. DND, CFB Rockcliffe, REA 253-16, Halifax Citadel, 1942; PAC, Massey Photo No. 10, 16 and 22, 1950.
  59. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
  60. Ibid., HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - site plan, J.J. Young, 26 Feb. 1916; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Glacis, barracks, etc., Maj. Benoit, 22 March 1916.
  61. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
  62. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907.
  63. Ibid.; HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908.

64. HDC, Plan - Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - 4.7 gun mounted for drill purposes, R.K., 1912.
65. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - RA Park and south barracks, J. Knight and others, 3 July 1925.
66. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1-v.3, Closing of Project No. 1, Hertzberg to Secretary, DND, 22 April 1936; Ibid., Caldwell to Quartermaster General, 24 June 1936; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
67. Lorna Innis, "That Was the Week...July 16-22, 1937", 15 July 1967. Newspaper clipping in Citadel Scrapbook on file in Park Superintendent's office. A search of Halifax papers of 16-22 July 1937, has not yielded the source of the news item.
68. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
69. HDC, untitled plan of Citadel, circa 1940.
70. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Ibid., January 1922; PAC, PA 48378. Dept. of Interior Coll., Citadel and Moat at Halifax, N.S., 1920s.
71. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Ramparts, site for proposed recreation establishment, G.B. Wright and others, 9 Sept. 1911.
72. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, July 1924; Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6298, "The Citadel, Halifax, N.S.", 4 July 1928.
73. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
74. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; Ibid., April 1908.
75. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
76. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, 1907; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
77. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
78. Ibid., Nova Scotia Museum, No. 6296, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S. 4 July 1928.
79. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel - miniature rifle range, Knight, 30 Sept. 1921; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, January 1922.
80. Report of the Dept. of National Defence Canada for the Fiscal Year Ending March 31, 1926 (Militia and Air Services). Annual Departmental Reports 1925 - 26, Vol. II.
81. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - site plan, 26 Feb. 1916; IAND, HQHC2,

Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.

82. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Progress Report No. 7, Lt. Col. Vince, 26 Nov. 1938.

## Endnotes

## Citadel Walls

1. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
2. Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
3. Massey Commission.
4. HDC, Citadel - Block Plan, 1907; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908.
5. HDC, untitled plan of signal station, 22 May 1920.
6. Ibid.; HDC, detail of struttts, R. Hart and others, 22 May 1920.
7. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, HQ 1376-11-1-v.1, Citadel Ground Plan, Benoit and others, 9 Nov. 1932.
8. P.A.C., RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Unemployment Relief Project plan to accompany progress report 30 March 1935, R.V. Hart and others.
9. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
10. PAC, Massey Photo No. 43, 1950; PAC, Massey Photo No. 1, 1950.
11. HDC, Detail of Struttts, 22 May 1920; HDC, DND Aerial of Citadel, 7 Sept. 1923.
12. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
13. Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
14. PAC, Massey Photo No. 44, 1950.
15. P.A.C., RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan to accompany progress report, 30 June 1934, R.V. Hart and others.
16. Ibid., PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934.
17. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
18. "Report on Restoration", Appendix E, Appendix A, pp. 5-6.
19. Ibid., PAC, Massey Photo No. 14, 1950.

20. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. Progress reports for August, Sept., Oct. 1934.
21. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
22. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 11; Appendix E.
23. Ibid.
24. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Ramparts, site for proposed recreation establishment, G.B. Wright and others, 9 Sept. 1911.
25. HDC, Detail of Struttts, 22 May 1920; HDC, DND Aerial of Citadel, 7 Sept. 1923; PAC, Massey Photo No. 34, 1950.
26. Ibid., Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934.
27. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
28. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Ramparts, site for proposed recreation establishment, 9 Sept. 1911.
29. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
30. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936; "Report on Restoration", Appendix E.
31. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934.
32. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
33. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, 1376-11-1, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934.
34. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
35. PAC, Massey Photo No. 16, 1950; PAC, Massey Photo No. 15, 1950.
36. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6298, "The Citadel, Halifax, N.S.", 4 July 1928; P.A.C., Massey Photo No. 10, 1950.
37. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
38. PAC, Massey Photo No. 9, 1950; PAC, Massey Photo No. 20, 1950.
39. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 6, Appendix E; PAC, Massey Photo No. 18, 1950; PAC, Massey Photo No. 17, 1950.



40. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Aerial Photo, incorrectly dated 20 Dec. 1938.
41. DND, C.F.B. Rockcliffe, REA 253-16, aerial photo, 1942.
42. PAC, Massey Photo No. 46, 1950.
43. Ibid., U.R.P. plan to accompany progress report, 30 June 1934;  
Ibid., Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934; IAND, HQHC2,  
Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; IAND, HQHC2, vol. 1, Wardle, Dept.  
of Mines and Resources, 21 Sept. 1937.
44. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
45. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Weekly Progress Reports, 1938-40.
46. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, U.R.P. plan, R.V. Hart and others, 28 Feb.  
1933; Ibid, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, R.V. Hart and others, 30 April 1936.
47. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936; PAC, Massey Photos  
No. 8, 9, 13A and 20, 1950.
48. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, Progress Report, August 1935.
49. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
50. Ibid.; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936. The \$4,000 estimated  
by LaFleche was for J-J, the retaining walls of the northwest demi-bastion  
and the west curtain. A typing error put the length of dismantled wall at  
15 rather than 150 ft.
51. PAC, Massey Photos No. 8, 13A and 20, 1950.
52. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 6, Appendix E.
53. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, HQ 1376-11-1-v.3, Caldwell, 25 Oct. 1934;  
PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3054, R.V. Hart and others. U.R.P. plan to accompany  
progress report, 31 July 1934; Ibid., Vol. 3055, R.V. Hart and others,  
U.R.P. plan to accompany progress report, Sept. 1934.
54. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; "Report on Restoration",  
Appendix A, pp. 11-12.
55. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3054, Works Progress Report, 31 Aug. 1934.
56. "Report on Restoration", p. 11,
57. Ibid., pp. 11-12.
58. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, U.R.P. plan, 28 Feb. 1933; Ibid., Vol.  
3054, U.R.P. plan, 31 July 1934.
59. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Harvey to Harkin, 7 Dec. 1934.
60. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov.  
1936.
61. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 Aug.

- 1934; Ibid., U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934.
62. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
  63. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, Sept. 1934.
  64. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936; "Report on Restoration", Appendix E.
  65. Ibid., Vol. 3053, U.R.P. plan, 28 Feb. 1933. Plan states 25 per cent of excavation previously completed and 15 per cent completed during February. Later plans give 35, rather than 40, for percentage completed.
  66. Ibid., Vol. 3054, U.R.P. plan, 31 Oct. 1933.
  67. PAC, Massey Photos No. 6, 20 and 26, 1950.
  68. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 7, Appendix E.
  69. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934.
  70. Ibid., Vol. 3053, U.R.P. plan, 28 Feb. 1933; Ibid., Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 April 1936.
  71. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 7, Appendix E; PAC, Massey Photo No. 7, 1950.
  72. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, Constantine to Secretary, DND, 7 February 1933.
  73. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 8; PAC, Massey Photo No. 24, 1950.
  74. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, Works Progress Report, 9 April 1936.
  75. Ibid., Vol. 3055, U.R.P. progress report, 30 Sept. 1934; Ibid., U.R.P. plan, Sept. 1934.
  76. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
  77. "Report on Restoration", p. 12; PAC, Massey Photo No. 23, 1950.
  78. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, Works Progress Report, 30 Sept. 1934; Ibid., Vol. 3056, Works Progress Report, 9 April 1936.
  79. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, pp. 12-13; PAC, Massey Photo No. 23, 1950.
  80. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, Sept. 1934.
  81. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
  82. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.

83. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, p. 5, Appendix E; PAC, Massey Photo No. 5, 1950.
84. Ibid., Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, 30 March 1935.
85. Ibid., Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 31 August 1935.
86. Ibid., Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
87. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 31 August 1935.
88. Ibid., Vol. 3053, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934.
89. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936; "Report on Restoration", Appendix E.
90. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, 30 March 1935.
91. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, pp. 3-4, Appendix E.
92. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, 31 Dec. 1934; Ibid, 30 March 1935.
93. Ibid., Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 April 1936.
94. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, pp. 3-4; PAC, Massey Photo No. 47, 1950.
95. Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 53/153, Plan-Elevation, West Ravelin South Counterscarp & L" Corner; PAC, Massey Photos No. 31 and 56, 1950.
96. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
97. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 April 1936.
98. "Report on Restoration", Appendix A, pp.1-2, Appendix E; PAC, Massey Photo No. 31, 1950.
99. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, Constantine to Secretary DND, 7 Feb. 1933.
100. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Sect'y DND, 23 Nov. 1932; Ibid., Citadel Ground Plan, Benoit, 9 Nov. 1932.
101. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
102. Ibid., Weekly Progress Reports, 1938-40.
103. Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 52/153, Plan - Elevation West Ravelin South Counterscarp Section; PANS, Ground Plan of Fort George or the Citadel, Halifax, N.S., from the actual measurement showing the state of the work, 31 Dec. 1847.
104. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Weekly Progress Report No. 14, Lt. Col. Vince.

105. Ibid., Weekly Progress Reports, 1938-40.
106. "Report on Restoration", Appendix E; Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 51/153, Plan, Elevation & Vault Profiles, West Ravelin Curve.
107. Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 50/153, Plan - Elevation West Ravelin North Counterscarp & H" Corner; PAC, Massey Photo No. 32, 1950.
108. Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 50/153, Plan - Elevation West Ravelin North Counterscarp & H" Corner; PAC, Massey Photo No. 40, 1950.
109. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3053, Constantine to Sect'y DND, 7 Feb. 1933.
110. Wilson, A.E., Halifax Citadel: Tunnel at West Ravelin Operations at 2B8, manuscript on file, August 1967.
111. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, Citadel Ground plan, 9 Nov. 1932; Ibid., Constantine to Sectetary DND, 9 Nov. 1932.
112. Project Office, HDC, as found record, Set G, 49/153, Plan - Elevation H" Section 190 to H" W.R.N.C. Corner.
113. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934.
114. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 Nov. 1935.
115. Ibid., Works Progress Report to 31 May 1936.
116. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
117. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; Ibid., Constantine to Secretary DND.
118. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 29 July 1936; Ibid., LaFleche, 24 Nov. 1936.
119. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), 14 April 1947.
120. "Report on Restoration", Appendix E; PAC, Massey Photo No. 39, 1950.
121. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 Nov. 1935.
122. Ibid., Vol. 3052, U.R.P. plan, 30 June 1934; Ibid., Vol 3053, 1376-11-1. Schedule of Priority of Work, 13 August 1934.
123. Ibid., Vol. 3056, Weekly Progress Report to 31 May 1936.
124. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 24 Nov. 1936.
125. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 29 Feb. 1936.
126. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
127. Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.

128. Ibid., Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 Nov. 1935.
129. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
130. Ibid., Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936; Ibid., Williamson to Wardle, 27 Nov. 1936.
131. PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3055, U.R.P. plan, 30 March 1935.
132. Ibid., Vol. 3056, U.R.P. plan, 30 Nov. 1935.

## Endnotes

## Casemates and Demi-casemates

1. An inventory of buildings in 1906 and six plans supply the majority of information on the use and structural details of the casemates in the Canadian period. Unless otherwise stated, all references to 1906, 1907, 1908, 1922, 1924, 1932 and circa 1940 are based on the following plans:
  - 1906 - PAC, RG 24, Vol. 6369, File 73-11-1C-v.2, Inventory of War Dept. Buildings, Halifax, N.S., Jan. 1906, p. 62.
  - 1907 - Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel or Fort George - Block plan, 1907.
  - 1908 - Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel or Fort George - Ground plan, 1908.
  - 1922 - Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel or Fort George - Ground plan, January 1922.
  - 1924 - Parks Canada. Halifax Defence Complex, Citadel or Fort George Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., July 1924.
  - 1932 - PAC, RG 24, C 9, Vol. 3052, The Citadel or Fort George, Ground Plan, Halifax, N.S., Proposed Quartering for 300 men, October 1932.
  - 1940 - Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex, untitled plan of Halifax Citadel, circa 1940.
2. Report of the Halifax Military Lands Board, op. cit. p. 73.
3. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3053, C 9, Hertzberg to Secretary, DND, 15 May 1934.
4. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., p. 4.
5. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 2, Vince, 2 Oct. 1939.
6. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Millward to D.O.C., MD 6, 23 Jan. 1942.
7. PAC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel or Fort George - Ground Plan, (Hereafter cited as Citadel Ground Plan), 19 Oct. 1891.

8. PC, HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; PAC, Massey Photo No. 14, 1950. The 1922 plan shows the wide opening but only one window.
9. HDC, unidentified photo of British period, crew of HMS Torpedo; PAC, Massey Photo No. 14, 1950.
10. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6297, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., Gauvin and Gentzell, 4 July 1928.
11. PAC, PA48378, Dept. of Interior coll., Citadel and Moat at Halifax, N.S., 1920s; PAC, Massey Photo No. 44, 1950.
12. HDC, Citadel Block Plan, April 1908.
13. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6298, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., Gauvin and Gentzell, 4 July 1928.
14. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, LaFleche, 29 July 1936.
15. Ibid., Sparks memo, 24 Nov. 1936 photo 3; HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; PAC, Massey Photo No. 42, 1950.
16. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, p. 4, Appendix E.
17. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6298, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., Gauvin and Gentzell, 4 July 1928.
18. PAC, Massey Photo No. 10, 1950.
19. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, p. 4, Appendix E.
20. HDC, Lavatories G.O.R. - Citadel Hill, 12 July 1943; HDC, G.O.R. in "B" magazine, Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943.
21. PAC, Massey Photo No. 17, 1950.
22. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, p. 4, Appendix E.
23. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Constantine, 18 Oct. 1932.
24. PAC, Massey Photo No. 9, 1950.
25. Ibid.
26. Ibid.; PAC, Massey Photo Nos. 9 and 41, 1950.
27. PAC, Citadel Ground Plan, 19 Oct. 1891.
28. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, photo 9, 24 Nov. 1936; PAC, Massey Photo no. 8, 1950.
29. PAC, Citadel Ground Plan, 19 Oct. 1891.
30. Ibid.
31. PAC, Massey Photos 7, 8 and 25, 1950.
32. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
33. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, p. 4, Appendix E.

34. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
35. Richard J. Young. "The West Front: Halifax Citadel" Manuscript on file. Halifax Defence Complex, Parks Canada, 1977, pp. 67, 118.
36. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, p. 8.
37. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914.
38. Ibid., Captain. R.C.A. to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 22 May 1915.
39. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel-site plan, 26 Feb. 1916.
40. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 16 Feb. 1915.
41. HDC, Citadel Block plan, April 1908; HDC, Citadel Ground plan, 1908.
42. PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
43. HDC, Citadel Block plan, April 1908; DND, Halifax Citadel, N.S. - Aerial photograph of Citadel from 1500 ft., 7 Sept. 1923; PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
44. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914; Ibid., Army Telegram, A.H., November 1914.
45. PAC, Massey Photo No. 12A, 1950.
46. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914; Ibid., Army Telegram, November 1914.
47. Ibid., Vol. 4542, File 73-1-27, Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry, 29 Jan. 1915, p. 3.
48. PAC, Massey Photo No. 12A, 1950.
49. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914.
50. Ibid., Vol. 4542, File 73-1-27, Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry, 29 Jan. 1915, p. 3.
51. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
52. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914.
53. Ibid., Vol. 4542, File 73-1-27, Proceedings of a Court of Inquiry, 29 Jan. 1915, p. 3.
54. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, File MD 6 73-2-1, Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914.
55. Ibid., Palmer, 5 May 1915.
56. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
57. Ibid., Palmer, 5 Oct. 1914.
58. Ibid., 16 Feb. 1915, Ibid., 17 March 1915.



59. PAC, Massey Photo No. 5, 1950.
60. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 4543, Vol. MD 6 73-2-1, 5 Oct. 1914.
61. Ibid., Palmer, 11 March 1915; Ibid., Capt. R.C.A. to D.O.I., 13 March 1915.
62. Ibid., Thacker to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 1 Oct. 1915.
63. Ibid., Captain RCA to D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 22 May 1915.
64. DND, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Sergeants' Mess - proposed installation of W.O. urinal and lavatory basin, 29 June 1913; HDC, Halifax N.S. - Citadel (casemates) Sergeants' Mess, R.V. Hart, 19 March 1921.
65. PAC, Citadel Ground Plan, 19 Oct. 1891; HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George - Block Plan, Arthur Hill, 1891.
66. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6297, The Citadel Halifax, N.S. Gauvin and Gentzell, 4 July 1928. PAC, Massey Photo No. 5, 1950.
67. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
68. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; PAC, Massey Photo No. 11, 1950.
69. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
70. HDC, Citadel Ground Plan, 1908; PAC, Massey Photo No. 12A, 1950.
71. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - proposed alterations to W.O.'s quarters, Citadel, P.B. Parkers, 19 July 1910. There are two sections, two floorplans and two elevations on the plan.
72. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
73. PAC, Massey photos No. 11 and 21, 1950.
74. DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), Gibson to Army Headquarters, 30 May 1947.
75. Ibid.
76. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Secretary DND, 18 Oct. 1932.
77. Ibid., Colonel to Q.M.G., 21 Oct. 1932; Ibid., Constantine to Secretary, DND, 25 Oct. 1932.
78. Ibid., Constantine to Secretary, DND, 25 Oct. 1932.
79. HDC, Citadel Block plan, April 1908.
80. PAC, Massey Photos No, 4, 1950.
81. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
82. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, proposed  
co conversion of recreation establishment into sergeants' mess (hereafter

- cited as Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F). Marshall and others, 1 Sept. 1911.
83. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6296, Gauvin and Gentzell, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 4 July 1928.
  84. HDC, Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, 1 Sept. 1911.
  85. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
  86. HDC, Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, 1 Sept. 1911.
  87. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Minshull to Mayor, 20 Nov. 1932.
  88. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6296, Gauvin and Gentzell, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 4 July 1928.
  89. HDC, Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, 1 Sept. 1911.
  90. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
  91. HDC, Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, 1 Sept. 1911.
  92. Ibid.
  93. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
  94. Nova Scotia Museum, Acc. No. 6296, Gauvin and Gentzell, The Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 4 July 1928; PAC, Massey Photo No. 3, 1950.
  95. HDC, Citadel - Casemates Blocks E & F, 1 Sept. 1911.
  96. Ibid.
  97. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Secretary, DND, 5 Dec. 1932.
  98. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks Memo, 24 Nov. 1936.
  99. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - The Citadel, Fort George, water and drainage plan, circa 1910.
  100. PAC, Massey Photo No. 37, 1950.
  101. PAC, RG 24, Vol. 3052, Constantine to Secretary DND, 5 Dec. 1932.
  102. IAND, HQHC2, Vol. 1, Sparks memo, 24 Nov. 1936; DND, DHIST, 345.009(D101), MacDonald to HQ Eastern Command, 14 April 1947.
  103. PAC, PA-87819, The Citadel Walls in Halifax, Nova Scotia, 8 Oct. 1927; PAC, Massey Photo No. 43, 1950.
  104. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix A, pp. 5-7, Appendix E.
  105. PAC, Massey Photo Nos. 10, 14 and 16, 1950.
  106. HDC, G.O.R. in "B" magazine Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943.

107. Ibid.; HDC, Lavatories G.O.R. - Citadel Hill, 12 July 1943.
108. HDC, Halifax, N.S. - Citadel - Ramparts, site for proposed recreation establishment, 9 Sept. 1911.
109. HDC, G.O.R. in "B" magazine Citadel, Halifax, N.S., 17 July 1943.
110. "Report on Restoration", op. cit., Appendix E.
111. PAC, Massey Photo No. 6, 1950.
112. Ibid.

## Bibliography

Abbot, Major A. J., Bezanson, Officer Cadet, Darwin; Lt.-Col. B. H.,  
Thompson, J. W. and Vaughan, J. P.

"Report on Restoration of the Halifax Citadel" Manuscript on file at  
Halifax Defence Complex, October 1950.

About Halifax, Nova Scotia. Halifax: Board of Trade, 1906 and 1908.

Beautiful Halifax, The City by the Sea. Halifax: Board of Trade, nd.

Belcher's Farmers' Almanac for the Maritime Provinces.

Halifax: MacAlpine, 1905 - 13, Royal Print & Litho Ltd., 1914 - 27, MacAlpine,  
1928, Might Directories Atlantic, 1929 - 30.

Bird, Will R.

"Yesterday is up the Hill". Canadian Geographical Journal, Vol. 53, No. 6  
(August 1956).

Blakeley, Phyllis

"Trotsky in Halifax". Atlantic Advocate. Vol. 55, No. 3 (November 1964),  
pp. 42 - 48.

Brown, Kingsley

"Depression Brings Restoration of Famous Old Citadel". Port and Province.  
February 1933. p. 10.

Canada

Report. Royal Commission on National Development in the Arts, Letters and  
Sciences 1949 - 51. Ottawa: King's Printer, 1951.

## Canada

Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. Parks Canada. Atlantic Region.  
Realty Services Records, Halifax Citadel Establishment.

Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. Parks Canada. Halifax Citadel  
National Historic Park.  
Superintendents' scrapbooks.

Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. Parks Canada. Halifax Defence  
Complex.

As-found records

Photograph collection

Map collection

Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. Parks Canada. Ottawa  
Headquarters backfiles, HC 2 Vol. 1 and Vol. 2.

Department of Militia and Defence.

Report of the Halifax Military Lands Board. 1915. Ottawa: King's Printer,  
1916.

Department of National Defence.

Report of the Department of National Defence. Ottawa: King's Printer,  
1931 - 49.

Department of National Defence.

Otter, Major-General Sir William. Internment Operations, 1914 - 20. Ottawa:  
King's Printer, 1921.

Department of National Defence. Directorate of History

Docket 345.009(D257) Annual reports on lettings, permits and encroachments  
in Halifax Garrison d/Apr 25 / Ap35.

Docket 345.009(D61) Binders re reports on Lettings, Permits and Encroachments  
d/1924-32.

Docket 112.3H1.009(D85) Standing Orders - Halifax Fortress, 1912 and 1923  
 Docket 345.009(D101)

Parliament

Annual Departmental Reports. Ottawa: King's Printer, 1924 - 30.

Sessional Papers.

Annual Report of the Militia Council. Vol. 41-56. Ottawa: King's Printer,  
 1906 - 1920.

Report of the Department of Militia and Defence. Vol. 57-58. Ottawa: King's  
 Printer, 1921-22.

Annual Report of the Militia Service. Vols. 59-61. Ottawa: King's Printer,  
 1923-25.

Public Archives.

National Photo Collection

RG22. Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources. Vol. 216.

RG24. Department of National Defence. Vols. 3052, 3053, 3054, 3055, 3056,  
 4542, 4543, 6553, 6369.

C.O. 42 Vol. 900.

The City of Halifax

Halifax: Wm. MacNab & Son, 1909.

Doyle, F. W.

"Halifax and war" Illustrated Canadian Bank. Vol. 53 (1946), pp. 130-40.

Feterstonhaugh, R.C.

The Royal Canadian Regiment, 1883 - 1933. Montreal: Gazette, 1936.

Gordon, Donald C.

The Dominion Partnership in Imperial Defence, 1883 - 1814. Baltimore: John  
 Hopkins, 1965.

Graham, Gerald

Empire of the North Atlantic. Toronto: 1950.

Greenough, John Joseph

The Halifax Citadel. Manuscript Report Series No. 154. Parks Canada, 1974,  
3 Vols.

"Halifax as a Fortress" The Maritime Advocate and Busy East. Vol. 31.  
No. 7 (February 1941) pp. 17-19, 29.

Halifax Chronicle Herald

11 May 1951.

Halifax Chronicle Herald and Mail Star Office.

Halifax Citadel clippings. Historical photographs file.

Halifax Daily Echo

Jan., Feb. 1906

Halifax Mail

1931, 1934-38, 1948

Halifax Mail Star

1949, July 1956, Oct. 1951, Dec. 1960, Feb. 1961.

Halifax, Nova Scotia and its Attractions. Howard & Kutsche, nd.

Hamilton, C.F.

"The Canadian Militia: The Maritime Provinces". Canadian Defence Quarterly,  
Vol. 4. (July 1929), pp. 474-83.

Lane, Richard B.

The Halifax Citadel. Manuscript Report Series No. 33, Parks Canada.

MacLean, T.D.

"Construction & Restoration at the Halifax Citadel, 1950-70" Manuscript on  
file, Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex, nd.

MacKinnon, Charles S.

"The Imperial Fortresses in Canada: Halifax and Esquimalt, 1871 - 1906".  
Unpublished PhD thesis, University of Toronto, 1965.

Morning Chronicle (Halifax)

Nov. 1905, July 1908.

Munro, George

"Halifax Citadel, Signal Mast, 1827 - 1938", Vol. 1. Manuscript on file,  
Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex, nd.

Nicholson, G.W.L.

The Gunners of Canada. The History of the Royal Regiment of Canadian  
Artillery. Vol. I. 1534 - 1919. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1967.

Nova Scotia, Public Archives

Photo Collection

Statutes of Nova Scotia, 1859.

Novascotian (Halifax)

November 1905.

Novascotian and Weekly Chronicle

March 1904, August 1905, March 1906.

Piers, Harry

The Evolution of the Halifax Fortress, 1749 - 1928. Halifax: Public Archives  
of Nova Scotia, 1947.

Quigley, John G.

A Century of Rifles. The Halifax Rifles, 1860 - 1960. Halifax: William  
MacNab, 1960.

Raddall, T. H.

Halifax, Warden of the North. 2nd ed. New York: Doubleday, 1964.



Stacey, Charles P.

"Halifax as an International Strategic Factor, 1749-1949". Canadian Historical Association, Annual Reports, (1949), pp. 46-56.

Stanley, G. F. G. In collaboration with Harold M. Jackson.

Canada's Soldiers, 1604 - 1954: A Military History of an Unmilitary People. Toronto: Macmillan, 1954.

Stuart, R.F.

"The Meteorological Service" The Canadian Magazine. Vol. 35, No. 3, (July 1910), pp. 195-204.

Sydney Post

December 1931.

Tucker, G.N.

The Naval Service of Canada: Its Official History. Vol. 1 Origins and Early Years. Ottawa: King's Printer, 1952.

Wells, Samuel F.

"British Strategic Withdrawal from the Western Hemisphere, 1904-06" Canadian Historical Review Vol. 49, (December, 1968), pp. 335-56.

Wilson, A.E.

"Halifax Citadel: Tunnel at West Ravelin, Operation at 2B8." Manuscript on file, Parks Canada, Halifax Defence Complex, 1967.

Wuorio, E.L.

"Seagrit citadel". Macleans. Vol. 61, No. 12 (1948), pp. 78-9.

Young, Richard

"The West Front: Halifax Citadel". Manuscript on file, Halifax Defence Complex, 1977.

